



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







820.8  
AGG3  
no. 1

English Reprints.

ROGER ASCHAM.

TOXOPHILUS.



A10098

Edited by EDWARD ARBER, F.S.A., etc.,

LECTURER IN ENGLISH LITERATURE, ETC.,  
UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

SOUTHGATE, LONDON, N.

1 July, 1868.

No. 7.

(All rights reserved.)

G



## CONTENTS.

---

CHRONICLE of the Life, Works, and Times of R. Ascham	3
INTRODUCTION, . . . . .	7
BIBLIOGRAPHY, . . . . .	10

### *TOXOPHILUS.* . . . . 11

1. Complimentary verses by Walter Haddon, BA. of King's College, Cambridge. . . . .	12
2. Dedication to King Henry VIII. . . . .	13
3. To all Gentlemen and Yomen of Englande. . . . .	16
4. The Table of Contents. . . . .	22
5. THE FIRST BOKE OF THE SCHOLE OF SHOTING . . . . .	25
6. THESECONDE BOOKE OF THE SCHOLE OF SHOTYNG. . . . .	106

NOTES . . . . .	165
-----------------	-----



English Reprints.

Roger Ascham,

Toxophilus.  
1545.

Edited by

Edward Arber, F.S.A.

London

1868

No. 7 G



LIBRARY  
of the  
University of  
Oxford  
210098

This title-page compiled fr. acc.bk. & Ref. catlg. 1922

α.10098 44707

CHRONICLE  
of  
some of the principal events  
in the  
LIFE, WORKS, and TIMES  
of  
ROGER ASCHAM,

Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Author. Tutor to Princess, afterwards Queen Elizabeth. Secretary of Embassy under Edward VI. Latin Secretary to Queens Mary and Elizabeth. Friend of Queen Elizabeth, &c.

\* Probable or approximate dates.

THE chief contemporary authorities for the life of Ascham are his own works, particularly his Letters, and a Latin oration *De vita et obitu Rogeri Aschami*, written by Rev. Dr. Edward Graunt or Grant, Headmaster of Westminster School, and 'the most noted Latinist and Grecian of his time.' This oration is affixed to the first collection of Ascham's Letters: the date of Grant's dedication to which is 16. Feb. 1576.

The figures in brackets, as (40), in the present work, refer to Ascham's Letters as arranged in Dr. Giles' edition.

1509. April 22. Henry VIII. succeeds to the throne.

511-12. 3. Hen. VIII. c. 3. required—under penalty on default of 12d per month—all subjects under 60, not lame, decrepid, or maimed, or having any other lawful Impediment; the Clergy Judges &c excepted; to use shooting in the long bow. Parents were to provide every boy from 7 to 17 years, with a bow and two arrows: after 17, he was to find himself a bow and four arrows. Every Bower for every Ewe bow he made was to make 'at the lest ij Bowes of Elme Wiche or other Wode of mean price,' under penalty of Imprisonment for 8 days. Butts were to be provided in every town. Aliens were not to shoot with the long bow without licence.

3 Hen. VIII. c. 13. confirms 19. Hen. VII. c 4 'against shooting in Cross-bowes &c,' which enacted that no one with less than 200 marks a year should use. This act increased the qualification from 200 to 300 marks.—*Statutes of the Realm*. iii. 25. 32.

\*1516,

ROGER ASCHAM was born in the year 1515, at Kirby Wiske, (or Kirby Wicke,) a village near North Allerton in Yorkshire, of a family above the vulgar. His father, John Ascham, was house-steward in the family of Lord Scroop, and is said to have borne an unblemished reputation for honesty and uprightness of life. Margaret, wife of John Ascham, was allied to many considerable families, but her maiden name is not known. She had three sons, Thomas, Antony, and Roger, besides some daughters; and we learn from a letter (21) written by her son Roger, in the year 1544, that she and her husband having lived together forty-seven years, at last died on the same day and almost at the same hour.

Roger's first years were spent under his father's roof, but he was received at a very youthful age into the family of Sir Antony Wingfield, who furnished money for his education, and placed Roger, together with his own sons, under a tutor, whose name was R. Bond. The boy had by nature a taste for books, and showed his good taste by reading English in preference to Latin, with

## CHRONICLE.

Childhood.

'My sweete tyme spent at Cambridge.' *The Scholemaster*, fol. 60, Ed. 1570.

wonderful eagerness. . . . —*Grant. Condensation by Dr. Giles in Life: see p. 10, No 9.*

"This communication of teaching youthe, m to remembre the right worshipfull and my singi mayster, Sir Humfrey Wingfelde, to whom ne I ought to refer for his manifolde benefites bes me, the poore talent of learnyng, whiche god me: and for his sake do I owe my service to of the name and noble house of the Wyngfeld in word and dede. Thys worshipfull man I loued and vsed, to haue many children brou learnynge in his house amonges whome I my one. For whom at terme tymes he woulde bry from London bothe bowe and shaftes. And w shuld playe he woulde go with them him self fælde, and se them shoote, and he that sho shulde haue the best bowe and shaftes, and he ilfaouredlye, shulde be mocked of his felowes, t better."—p. 140.

In or about the year 1530, Mr. Bord . . . res charge of young Roger, who was now abo years old, and, by the advice and pecuniary : kind patron Sir Antony, he was enabled to John's College, Cambridge, at that time the mo s-ministry of learning in all England. His tutor Fitzherbert, fellow of St. John's, whose intima George Pember, took the most lively intere young student. George Day, afterwards F Chichester, Sir John Cheke, Sir Thomas Si Redman, one of the compilers of the Book of Prayer, Nicholas Ridley the Martyr, T. Watso of Lincoln, Pilkington Bishop of Durham, Wadon, John Christopherson, Thomas Wilson, Jo and many others, were the distinguished conte of Ascham at Cambridge.—*Grant and Giles, id*

1530. set. 15. He takes his B.A. "Being a boy, new Bachel I chanced amonges my companions to speake a Pope: which matter was than in euery mans n cause *Dr. Haines* and *Dr. Skippe* were cum Court, to debate the same matter, by preachin putation in the vniuersitie. This hapned the sa when I stooede to be felow there: my taulke ca *Medcalfes* [Master of St. John's Coll.] eare: I before him and the Seniores: and after greuou and some punishment, open warning was geuen felowes, none to be so hardie to geue me his vo election. And yet for all those open threatres, father himselfe priuillie procured, that I should be chosen felow. But, the election being done countenance of great discontentation thereat.

Mar. 23.

mans goodnes, and fatherlie discretion, vsed to that one day, shall neuer out of my remembra dayes of my life. And for the same cause, h it here, in this small record of learning. For : providence, surely that day, was by that go meanes, *Dies natalis*, to me, for the whole f of the poore learning I haue, and of all the fi that hetherto else where I haue obtayned."—*Sc*

1537-40.

"Before the king's majesty established his Cambridge, I was appointed by the votes : university, and was paid a handsome salary, the Greek tongue in public; and I have ever :

a lecture in St. John's college, of which I am a fellow."  
(28) *To Sir W. Paget in 1544.*

1537. July 3. [*die martis post festum Diui Petri et Pauli* (June 29)  
æt. 21. *Grant*]. Is installed M.A.

1538. Spring. Visits his parents in Yorkshire, whom he had not seen  
æt. 22. for seven years.

Autumn. Date of his earliest extant letter.

1540-1542. Is at home in Yorkshire, for nearly two years, with  
quartan fever. Probably about this time he attended the  
archery meetings at York and Norwich. pp. 159. 160.

1540. æt. 24. 'In the great snowe,' journeying 'in the hye waye  
betwixt Topcliffe vpon Swale; and Borrowe bridge,' he  
watches the nature of the wind by the snow-drifts. p. 157.

1541. æt. 25. Upon his repeated application, Edward Lee, Archbp  
of York, grants him a pension of 40s. (= £40 of present  
money) payable at the feast of Annunciation and on  
Michaelmas day. *see* (24). This pension ceased on the  
death of the Archbishop in 1544.

1541-2. 33 Hen. VIII. c. 9. 'An Acte for Mayntenance of  
Artyllarie and debarring of unlaful Games.' confirms  
3 Hen. VIII. c. 3. and, *inter alia*, directs that no Bowyer  
shall sell a Ewe bow to any between 8 and 14 years, above  
the price of 12d, but shall have for such, Ewe bows from  
6d to 12d: and likewise shall sell bows at reasonable prices  
to youth from 14 to 21 years. Ewe bows 'of the taxe called  
Elke' were not to be sold above 3s 4d, under penalty of  
20s.—*Statutes of the Realm*. iii. 837.

1544. \*Spring. æt. 28. Ascham writes *Toxophilus*.  
After Lady Day. Both his parents die. "How hard is my lot! I first  
lost my brother, such an one as not only our family, but  
all England could hardly match, and now to lose both  
my parents as if I was not already overwhelmed with  
sorrow!" (21) *To Cheke*.

Before July. "I have also written and dedicated to the king's  
majesty a book, which is now in the press, *On the art  
of Shooting*, and in which I have shown how well it is  
fitted for Englishmen both at home and abroad, and how  
certain rules of art may be laid down to ensure its being  
learnt thoroughly by all our fellow-countrymen. This  
book, I hope, will be published before the king's depart-  
ure, and will be no doubtful sign of my love to my coun-  
try, or mean memorial of my humble learning. (22) *To  
Sir W. Paget*.

July—Sept. 30. The king out of the kingdom, at the head of 30,000 men  
at the siege of Boulogne, in France.

1545. æt. 29. Ascham presents *Toxophilus* to the king, in the gallery  
at Greenwich. He is granted a pension of £10. pp. 165-166.  
He is ill again, and unable to reside at Cambridge.

1546. æt. 30. Succeeds Cheke as Public Orator of his University,  
in which capacity he conducts its correspondence.

1547. Jan. 28. Edward VI. comes to the throne.

Ascham's pension which ceased on the death of  
Henry VIII., was confirmed and augmented by Edward  
VI., whom he taught to write. [Ascham's pension is  
one of the prominent things in his life.]

1548. Feb. æt. 32. Is Tutor to Princess Elizabeth, at Cheston. Attacked  
1549. Sept. æt. 33. by her steward, he returns to the university.

1550. æt. 34. While at home in the country, Ascham is appointed, at  
the instigation of Cheke, as Secretary to Sir Richard  
Morison, sent out as Ambassador to Emperor Charles V.  
On his way to town, has his famous interview with  
Lady Jane Grey at Broadgate. *Scholemaster*, fol. 12.

Tutor. 'My sweete tyme spent at Cambridge.' *The Scholemaster*, fol. 60. Ed. 1570.

- Secretary of Embassy.
- Sept 21. The Embassy embarks at Billingsgate, and f  
reaches Augsburg on Oct. 28; where it appears to  
remained more than a year.
1552. Oct. Ascham writes, probably from Spires, *A Repor.  
Discourse written by Roger Ascham, of the affaire  
state of Germany and the Emperour Charles his  
during certaine yeares while the sayd Roger was*  
Published at London, the next year, without date.
1553. July 7. 1553. July 6. Marp succeeds to the crown.  
Writes from Brussels.  
On the death of the King the Embassy is recal
- Latin Secretary to Queens Mary and Elizabeth.
1554. April. Though a Protestant, Ascham escapes persec  
his pension of £10 is renewed and increased, *see f*  
May 7. He is made Latin Secretary to the Queen, with a  
of 40 marks.  
Resigns his Fellowship and Office of Public Ora  
June 1. et. 38. Marries Margaret Howe.  
He sometimes reads Greek with the Princess Eliz
1558. Nov. 17. Elizabeth begins to reign.  
Ascham's pension and Secretaryship are continu
1560. Mar. 11. Is made prebend of Wetwang, in York Cathedra  
et. 44. had now possession of a considerable income. It  
be satisfactory if he could be cleared from the sus  
of a too great love for cock-fighting.
1563. Dec. 10. The Court being at Windsor on account of the r  
et. 47. in London, Sir W. Cecil gave a dinner in his cha  
A conversation on Education arose on the news  
diuerse Scholers of Eaton be runne awaie froi  
Schole, for feare of beating. Sir Richard Sackville  
silent, afterwards renewed the subject with Ascham  
finally writes for his grandson, Robert Sackville  
*Scholemaster*, first published by his widow in 1570  
His constitution had been enfeebled by frequent a  
of ague. Imprudently sitting up late to finish some  
verses which he designed to present to the quee  
new-year's gift, and certain letters to his friends, h  
tracted a dangerous malady, during which he was  
and consoled by his pious friend Alexander Nowell  
of St. Paul's, and William Gravet, a prebendary c  
church and vicar of St. Sepulchre's London. As  
died 30 Dec. 1568. His last words were "I de  
et. 53. depart and to be with Christ."
- Illness and death.
1568. Dec. 30.  
et. 53. depart and to be with Christ."  
1569. Jan. 4. He was buried at St. Sepulchre's. Nowell pre  
his funeral sermon, and testified that he never s  
heard of a person of greater integrity of life, or wh  
blessed with a more christian death. Queen Eliz  
when informed of his decease, declared that she  
rather have lost £10,000, than her tutor Ascham.

Buchanan did honour to his memory in the following epitaph:

*Aschamum extinctum patrie, Graiaque Camena,  
Et Latiae verbis cum pietate dolent.*

*Principibus vixit carus, iucundis amicis,*

*Re modico, in mores dicere fama nequit.*

which has been thus rendered by Archdeacon Wrangham.

*O'er Ascham, withering in his narrow urn,*

*The muses—English, Grecian, Roman—mourn;*

*Though poor, to greatness dear, to friendship just:*

*No scandal's self can taint his hallow'd dust.*

*Cooper. Ath. Cantab. p. :*

# TOXOPHILUS.

## INTRODUCTION.

**D**Espite his promise, see page 20, Afcham wrote no English work on a great subject. Writing late in life, his *Scholemaster*, he thus defends his choice in the subjects of his books :

“ But, of all kinde of pastimes, fitte for a Ientleman, I will, godwilling, in fitter place, more at large, declare fullie, in my booke of the Cockpitte : which I do write, to satisfie som, I trust, with som reason, that be more curious, in marking other mens doinges, than carefull in mending their owne faultes. And som also will nedes busie them selues in merueling, and adding thereunto vnfrendlie taulke, why I, a man of good yeares, and of no ill place, I thanke God and my Prince, do make choise to spend soch tyme in writyng of trifles, as the schole of shoting, the Cockpitte, and this booke of the first Principles of Grammer, rather, than to take some weightie matter in hand, either of Religion, or Ciuill discipline.

Wise men I know, will well allow of my choise herein : and as for such, who haue not witte of them selues, but must learne of others, to iudge right of mens doynge, let them read that wise Poet *Horace* in his *Arte Poetica*, who willeth wisemen to beware, of hie and lostie Titles. For, great shippes, require costlie tackling, and also afterward dangerous gouernment. Small boates, be neither verie chargeable in making, nor verie oft in great ieoperdie : and yet they cary many tymes, as good and costlie ware, as greater vessels do. A meane Argument, may easelie beare, the light burden of a small faute, and haue alwaise at hand, a ready excuse for ill handling : And, some praise it is, if it so chaunce, to be better in deede, than a man dare venture to seeme. A hie title, doth charge a man, with the heauie burden, of to great a promise, and therefore sayth *Horace* verie wittelie, that,

that Poet was a verie foole, that began hys booke, with a goodlie verse in deede, but ouer proude a promise.

*Fortunam Priami cantabo et nobile bellum,*

And after, as wiselie

*Quantò rectius hic, qui nil molitur ineptè. &c.*

Meening *Homer*, who, within the compasse of a smal Argument, of one harlot, and of one good wife, did vtter so moch learning in all kinde of sciences, as, by the iudgement of *Quintilian*, he deserueth so hie a praise, that no man yet deserued to sit in the second degree beneth him. And thus moch out of my way, concerning my purpose in spending penne, and paper, and tyme, vpon trifles, and namelie to aunswere some, that haue neither witte nor learning, to do any thyng them selues, neither will nor honestie, to say well of other" \*

Certain it is, that in both *Toxophilus* and *The Scholemaster* (the *Cockpitte* if ever printed, is now lost); not only are the main arguments interwoven with a most earnest moral purpose; but they are enlivened by frequent and charming discursions, in the which he often lays down great principles, or illustrates them from the circumstances of his time. So that in these two ways, these works, being not rigidly confined to the technical subjects expressed by their titles, do 'beare,' both in those subjects and in the passing thoughts, much of what is the highest truth.

If a Yorkshire man—who had become a ripe English Scholer, and was also a fluent English writer as well as conversant with other languages and literatures—were, in the present day, to sit down to write, for the first time, in the defence and praise of Cricket, a book in the Yorkshire dialect: he would be able to appreciate somewhat Afcham's position when he began to write the present work. For he lived in the very dawn of our modern learning. Not to speak of the hesitation and doubt that always impedes any novelty, the absence of any antecedent literature left him without any model of style. Accustomed as he had hitherto been to write chiefly in Latin, he must have found English composition both irksome and laborious. Yet his love for his

\* folios 20. 21. Ed. 1570.

country, and his delight, even from childhood, in his native tongue overcame all difficulties. "Although to haue vwritten this boke either in latin or Greeke . . . had been more easier and fit for mi trade in study, yet neuerthelesse, I supposinge it no point of honestie, that mi commodite should stop and hinder ani parte either of the pleasure or profite of manie, haue vwritten this Englishe matter in the Englishe tongue, for Englishe men." \* In so doing, he has bequeathed to posterity a noble specimen of English language, expressing genuine English thought, upon a truly English subject.

Of the influence of this deliberate choice of Ascham on the literature of his time, Dr. N. Drake thus speaks :—

"The *Toxophilus* of this useful and engaging writer, was written in his native tongue, with the view of presenting the public with a specimen of a purer and more correct *English* style than that to which they had hitherto been accustomed; and with the hope of calling the attention of the learned, from the exclusive study of the Greek and Latin, to the cultivation of their vernacular language. The result which he contemplated was attained, and, from the period of this publication, the shackles of Latinity were broken, and composition in *English* prose became an object of eager and successful attention. Previous to the exertions of Ascham, very few writers can be mentioned as affording any model for English style. If we except the Translation of Froissart by Bouchier, Lord Berners, in 1523, and the History of Richard III. by Sir Thomas More, certainly compositions of great merit, we shall find it difficult to produce an author of much value for his vernacular prose. On the contrary, very soon after the appearance of the *Toxophilus*, we find harmony and beauty in English style emphatically praised and enjoined." †

Following Plato both in the form and subtlety of his work, Ascham writes it after the counsel of Aristotle. "He that wyll wryte well in any tongue, muste solowe thys counsell of Aristotle, to speake as the common people do, to thinke as wise men do: and so shoulde euery man vnderstande hym, and the iudgement of wyse men alowe hym." ‡

Now, we must leave the reader to listen to the pleasant talk of the two College Fellows, *Lover of Learning* and *Lover of Archery*; as they discourse, beside the wheat fields in the neighbourhood of Cambridge, throughout the long summer's afternoon, upon "the Booke and the Bowe."

\* p. 14. † *Shakspeare and his Times*. i. 439. Ed. 1817. ‡ p. 13.



# BIBLIOGRAPHY.

## TOXOPHILUS.

• Editions not seen.

(a) Issues in the Author's life time.

I. *As a separate publication.*

1. 1545. London. *Editio princeps*. Engraved title page, see opposite page. The Colophon is as on p. 165.

(b) Issues subsequent to the Author's death.

I. *As a separate publication.*

2. 1571. London. TOXOPHILUS, The Schole, or partitions of shooting containyd in ij. bookes, written by Roger Ascham, 1544. And now newlye perused. Pleasaunt for all Gentlemen and Yomen of England for theyr pastime to reade, and profitable for their vie to solovve bothe in vvarre and peace. Anno 1571. Imprinted at London in Fletestrete neare to Saint Dunstones Church by Thomas Marthe.

3. 1589. London. Same title as No. 2. AT LONDON. Printed by ABELL IEFFES, by the consent of H. Marsh. Anno 1589. The Colophon is ¶ AT LONDON, Printed by Abell Ieffes, dwelling in Phillip Lane, at the Signe of the Bell. Anno Domini 1589.

6. 1788. Wrexham. Same title as No. 2, of which it is a modernized reprint. Ed. with a Dedication and Preface, by Rev. JOHN WALTERS M.A. Master of Ruthin School, and late Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford.

10. 1865. London. 1 vol. 8vo. TOXOPHILUS: &c., published separately from Dr Giles' Edition, No. 9.

11. 1 July 1868. London. 1 vol. 8vo. *English Reprints*: see title at page 1.

II. *With other works.*

4. 1761. London. The English Works of Roger Ascham, Preceptor to Queen Elizabeth. [Life by Dr JOHN-SON.] Ed. by JAMES BENNETT, Master of the Boarding School at Hoddesdon, Herts. 'Toxophilus' occupies pp 51-178.

6. n. d. London. 1 vol. 4to. Another impression of No 4.

7. 1815. London. Same title as No. 4 A new edition. [Ed: by J. G. COCHRANE, and limited to 250 copies. Dr Giles.]

8. \* n. d. London. No. 7 'was re-issued some time afterwards, with a new title and the addition of a half-title, but without a date.' Dr Giles, Pref. to his Edition No. 9.

9. 1864-5. London. The Whole Works of Roger Ascham, now first collected and revised, with a life of the author; by Rev. DR GILES, formerly Fellow of C.C.C. Oxford. 'Toxophilus' occupies ii. 1-165. [This is by far the best edition of Ascham's works.]



*Gualterus Haddonus  
Cantabrigien.*

*Mittere qui celeres summa uelit arte sagittas,  
Ars erit ex isto summa profecta libro.  
Quicquid habent arcus rigidi, neruique rotundi,  
Sumere si libet, hoc sumere fonte licet.  
Aschamus est author, magnum quem fecit Apollo  
Arte sua, magnum Pallas & arte sua.  
Docta manus dedit hunc, dedit hunc mens docta libell.  
Quæ uidet Ars Vfus uisa, parata facit.  
Optimus hæc author quia tradidit optima scripta,  
Conuenit hec uobis optima uelle sequi.*

*\*To the moste graciouse, and our most drad Soueraigne lord,  
 Kyng Henrie the. viii, by the grace of God, kyng  
 of Englande, Fraunce and Irelande, Defen  
 der of the saythe, and of the church  
 of Englande and also of Irelande  
 in earth supreme head, next vn  
 der Christ, be al health  
 victorie, and fe  
 licity.*



**H**AT tyme as, moste gracious Prince, your highnes this last year past, tooke that your moost honorable and victorious iourney into Fraunce, accompanied vvith such a porte of the Nobilitie and yeomanrie of Englande, as neyther hath bene lyke knovven by experience, nor yet red of in Historie : accompanied also vvith the daylie prayers, good hartes, and vvilles of all and euery one your graces subiectes, leste behinde you here at home in Englande : the same tyme, I beinge at my booke in Cambrige, forie that my litle habilitie could stretche out no better, to helpe forvvard so noble an enterprice, yet with my good vvylle, prayer, and harte, nothinge behynde hym that vvvas formoste of all, conceyed a vvonderful desire, bi the praier, vvishing, talking, and communication that vvvas in euery mans mouth, for your Graces moost victoriously retourne, to offer vp sumthinge, at your home cumming to your Highnesse, vvwhich shuld both be a token of mi loue and deutie tovvard your Maiestie, and also a signe of my good minde and zeale tovvarde mi countrie.

This occasion geuen to me at that time, caused me

\* This dedication is entirely omitted in second edition, 1571.

to take in hand againe, this litle purpose of  
 begon of me before, yet not ended than, for  
 studies more mete for that trade of liuinge, vvhich  
 and mi frendes had set me vnto. But vvhich  
 Graces moste ioifull and happie victorie preue  
 dailie and spedie diligencie to performe this  
 I vvas compelled to vvaite an other time to  
 and offer vp this litle boke vnto your Maiestie  
 vvhich it hath pleased youre Highnesse of your  
 goodnesse, and also your most honorable Co  
 knowv and peruse ouer the contentes, and son  
 of this boke, and so to alowv it, that other me  
 rede it, throughe the furduraunce and setting  
 the right worshipfull and mi Singuler good M  
 Vvilliam Pagette Knight, moost vvorthie Secre  
 your highnes, and most open and redie succor  
 poore honest learned mens futes, I moost  
 beseeche your Grace to take in good vvorthie  
 treatise purposed, begon, and ended of me on  
 this intent, that Labour, Honest pastime and  
 might recouer againe that place and right, that  
 Vnthriftie gamning and Vice hath put them fr

And althoughe to haue vvritten this boke in  
 latin or Greke (vvhich thing I vvould be verie glad  
 to do, if I might surelie knowv your Graces pleasure  
 in) had bene more easie and fit for mi trade  
 yet neuerthelesse, I supposinge it no point of  
 that mi commodite should stop and hinder  
 either of the pleasure or profite of manie, ha  
 ten this Englishe matter in the Englishe tongue  
 Englishe men: vvhich in this I trust that you  
 (if it shall please your Highnesse to rede it) shal  
 ceauce it to be a thinge Honeste for me to  
 pleasaunt for some to rede, and profitable for  
 folowv, contening a pastime, honest for the  
 holosome for the body, fit for eueri man, vile  
 man, vsing the day and open place for Honesti  
 it, not lurking in corners for misorder to

Therefore I trust it shal apere, to be bothe a sure token  
 of my zeele to set forwarde shootinge, and some signe  
 of my minde, tovvardes honestie and learninge.

Thus I vvill trouble your Grace no longer, but  
 vvith my daylie praier, I vvill beseeche God to  
 preferue your Grace, in al health and feli-

citie : to the feare and ouerthrowe

of all your ennemies : to the

pleasure, ioyfulnesse and

succour of al your sub-

iectes : to the vtter

destruction

of papi-

strie and heresie : to the con-

tinuall setting forth of

Goddess vvorde

and his glo

rye.

Your Graces most  
 bounden Scholer,

Roger Ascham

TO ALL GENTLE MEN AND YOMEN OF  
ENGLANDE.



As the wyse man came to Crefus the ryche kyng, on a tyme, when he was makynge newe shyppes, purposyng to haue subdued by water the out yles lying betwixt Grece and Asia minor: What newes now in Grece.

saith the king to Bias? None other newes, but these. sayeth Bias: that the yles of Grece haue prepared a wonderful companie of horsemen, to ouerrun Lydia withall. There is nothyng vnder heauen, sayth the kyng, that I woulde so soone wisse, as that they durst be so bolde, to mete vs on the lande with horse. And thinke you sayeth Bias, that there is anye thyng which they wolde sooner wisse, then that you shulde be so fonde, to mete them on the water with shyppes? And so Crefus hearyng not the true newes, but perceuyng the wise mannes mynde and counsell, both gaue then ouer makynge of his shyppes, and left also behynde him a wonderful example for all commune wealthes to folowe: that is euermore to regarde and set most by that thing wherevnto nature hath made them moost apt, and vse hath made them moost fitte.

By this matter I meane the shotyng in the long bowe, for English men: which thyng with all my hert I do wyssh, and if I were of authoritie, I wolde counsel all the gentlemen and yomen of Englande, not to chaunge it with any other thyng, how good foeuer it seme to be: but that styll, accordyng to the oulde wont of England, youth shoulde vse it for the moost honest pastyme in peace, that men myght handle it as a mooste sure weapon in warre. Other stronge weapons which bothe experience doth proue to be good, and the



wyfdom of the kinges Maieftie and his counfel prouydes to be had, are not ordeyned to take away shotyng: but yat both, not compared together, whether ſhuld be better then the other, but ſo ioyned together that the one ſhoulde be alwayes an ayde and helpe for the other, myght ſo ſtrengthen the Realme on all fydes, that no kynde of enemy in any kynde of weapon, myght paſſe and go beyonde vs.

For this purpoſe I, partelye prouoked by the counfell of ſome gentlemen, partly moued by the loue whiche I haue alwayes borne towarde ſhotyng, haue wrytten this lytle treatiſe, wherein if I haue not ſatiſfied any man, I truſt he wyll the rather be content with my doying, bycauſe I am (I ſuppoſe) the firſte, whiche hath ſayde any thyng in this matter (and fewe begynnyngeſ be perfect, ſayth wyſe men) And alſo bycauſe yf I haue ſayed a miſſe, I am content that any man amende it, or yf I haue ſayd to lytle, any man that wyl to adde what hym pleaſeth to it.

My minde is, in profitynge and pleaſynge euery man, to hurte or diſpleaſe no man, intendyng none other purpoſe, but that youthe myght be ſtyrred to labour, honeſt paſtyme, and vertue, and as much as laye in me, plucked from ydlenes, vnthriftie games, and vice: whyche thing I haue laboured onely in this booke, ſhewynge howe fit ſhootyng is for all kyndes of men, howe honeſt a paſtyme for the mynde, howe holfome an exerciſe for the bodye, not vile for great men to uſe, not coſtlye for poore men to ſuſteyne, not lurking in holes and corners for ill men at theyr pleaſure, to miſuſe it, but abiding in the open ſight and face of the worlde, for good men if it fault by theyr wiſdome to correct it.

And here I woulde deſire all gentlemen and yomen, to uſe this paſtime in ſuche a mean, that the outrageousnes of great gamyng, ſhuld not hurte the honeſtie of ſhotyng, which of his owne nature is alwayes ioyned with honeſtie: yet for mennes faultes oftentymes blamed vnworthely, as all good thynges haue ben, and euer more ſhall be.



If any man would blame me, eyther for takynge such a matter in hande, or els for writing it in the Englyshe tongue, this answere I may make hym, that whan the beste of the realme thinke it honest for them to vse, I one of the meaneſt ſorte, ought not to ſuppoſe it vile for me to write : And though to haue written it in an other tonge, had bene bothe more profitable for my ſtudy, and alſo more honest for my name, yet I can thinke my labour wel beſtowed, yf with a little hynderaunce of my profyt and name, maye come any fourtheraunce, to the pleaſure or commoditie, of the gentlemen and yeomen of Englande, for whose ſake I tooke this matter in hande. And as for ye Latin or greke tonge, euery thing is ſo excellently done in them, that none can do better : In the Englyſh tonge contrary, euery thinge in a maner ſo meanly, bothe for the matter and handelynge, that no man can do worſe. For therein the leaſt learned for the moſte parte, haue ben alwayes mooſt redye to wryte. And they whiche had leaſte hope in latin, haue bene moſte bould in englyſhe : when ſurely euery man that is moſte ready to taulke, is not mooſt able to wryte. He that wyll wryte well in any tongue, muſte folowe thys counſel of Ariſtotele, to ſpeake as the common people do, to thinke as wiſe men do ; and ſo ſhoulde euery man vnderſtande hym, and the iudgement of wyſe men alowe hym. Many Engliſh writers haue not done ſo, but vſinge ſtraunge wordes as latin, french and Italian, do make all thinges darke and harde. Ones I communed with a man whiche reaſoned the englyſhe tongue to be enryched and encreaſed therby, ſayinge : Who wyll not prayſe that feaſte, where a man ſhall drinke at a diner, bothe wyne, ale and beere ? Truly quod I, they be all good, euery one taken by hym ſelfe alone, but if you putte Malueſye and ſacke, read wyne and white, ale and beere, and al in one pot, you ſhall make a drynke, neyther eaſie to be knowen, nor yet holfom for the bodye. Cicero in folowyng Iſocrates, Plato and Demotheſenes, increaſed the latine tounge after an

other sorte. This waye, bycause dyuers men yat write, do not know, they can neyther folowe it, bycause of theyr ignorauncie, nor yet will prayse it, for verye arrogauncie, ii faultes, feldome the one out of the others companye.

Englysh writers by diuerstie of tyme, haue taken diuerse matters in hande. In our fathers tyme nothing was red, but bookes of fayned cheualrie, wherein a man by redinge, shuld be led to none other ende, but onely to manslaughter and baudrye. Yf any man suppose they were good ynough to passe the time with al, he is deceyued. For surelye vayne woordes doo worrke no smal thinge in vayne, ignoraunt, and younge mindes, specially yf they be gyuen any thyng therunto of theyr owne nature. These bokes (as I haue heard say) were made the moste parte in Abbayes, and Monasteries, a very lickely and fit fruite of fuche an ydle and blynde kinde of lyuyng.

In our tyme nowe, whan euery manne is gyuen to knowe muche rather than to liue wel, very many do write, but after fuche a fashon, as very many do shoote. Some shooters take in hande stronger bowes, than they be able to mayntayne. This thyng maketh them summtyme, to outshoote the marke, summtyme to shote far wyde, and perchaunce hurte summe that looke on. Other that neuer learned to shote, nor yet knoweth good shafte nor bowe, wyll be as busie as the best, but fuche one commonly plucketh doune a fyde, and crafty archers which be agaynst him, will be bothe glad of hym, and also euer ready to laye and bet with him: it were better for fuche one to sit doune than shote. Other there be, whiche haue verye good bowe and shaftes, and good knowledge in shootinge, but they haue bene brought vp in fuche euyl fauoured shootynge, that they can neyther shoote fayre, nor yet nere. Yf any man wyll applye these thynges togyther, shal not se the one farre differ from the other.

And I also amonges all other, in writinge this lytle treatise, haue folowed summe yonge shooters, whiche

bothe wyll begyn to shoote, for a lytle moneye, and also wyll vse to shote ones or twise about the marke for nought, afore they beginne a good. And therfore did I take this little matter in hande, to assaye my selfe, and hereafter by the grace of God, if the iudgement of wyse men, that looke on, thinke that I can do any good, I maye perchaunce caste my shafte amonge other, for better game.

Yet in writing this booke, some man wyll maruayle perchaunce, why that I beyng an vnperfyte shoter, shoulde take in hande to write of makynge a perfyte archer: the same man peraduenture wyll maruayle, howe a whettestone whiche is blunte, can make the edge of a knife sharpe: I woulde ye same man shulde consider also, that in goyng about anye matter, there be. iiii. thinges to be considered, doynge, faying, thinking and perfectnesse: Firste there is no man that doth so wel, but he can saye better, or elles summe men, whiche be now starke nought, shuld be to good. Agayne no man can vtter wyth his tong, so wel as he is able to imagin with his minde, and yet perfectnesse it selfe is farre aboue all thinking. Than seeing that faying is one steppe nerer perfectenesse than doynge, let euery man leue marueylyng why my woorde shall rather expresse, than my dede shall perfourme perfecte shootinge.

I truste no man will be offended with this litle booke excepte it be summe fletchers and bowyers, thinking hereby that manye that loue shootynge shall be taughte to refuse suche noughtie wares as they woulde vtter. Honeft fletchers and bowyers do not so, and they that be vnhonest, oughte rather to amende them selues for doinge ill, than be angrie with me for fayinge wel. A fletcher hath euen as good a quarell to be angry with an archer that refuseth an ill shaft, as a bladefmith hath to a fletcher yat forsaketh to bye of him a noughtie knyfe. For as an archer must be content that a fletcher know a good shafte in euery poynte for the perfecter makynge of it, So an honeste fletcher will also be content that a shooter knowe a good shafte in euery

poynte for the perfiter vsing of it: bicause the one knoweth like a fletcher how to make it, the other knoweth lyke an archer howe to vse it. And seying the knowlege is one in them bothe, yet the ende diuerse, surely that fletcher is an enemye to archers and artillery, whiche can not be content that an archer knowe a shafte as well for his vse in shotynge, as he hym selfe shoulde knowe a shafte, for hys aduauntage in fellynge. And the rather bycause shaftes be not made so muche to be folde, but chesely to be vsed. And seynge that vse and occupying is the ende why a shafte is made, the making as it were a meane for occupying, surely the knowelege in euery poynte of a good shafte, is more to be required in a shooter than a fletcher.

Yet as I sayde before no honest fletcher will be angry with me, seinge I do not teache howe to make a shafte whiche belongeth onelye to a good fletcher, but to knowe and handle a shafte, which belongeth to an archer. And this lytle booke I truste, shall please and profite both partes: For good bowes and shaftes shall be better knowne to the commoditie of al shoters, and good shotynge may perchaunce be the more occupied to the profite of all bowyers and fletchers. And thus I praye God that all fletchers getting theyr lyuyng truely, and al archers vsynge shootynge honestly, and all maner of men that fauour artillery, may lyue continuallye in

healthe and merineffe, obeying theyr  
prince as they shulde, and louing

God as they ought, to whom

for al thinges be al ho-  
nour and glorye for

euer. Amen

# TOXOPHILVS,

## The schole of shootinge conteyned in tvvo bookes.

*To all Gentlemen and yomen of Englande,  
pleasaunte for theyr pastyme to rede,  
and profitable for theyr use  
to folow, both in war  
and peace.*

The contentes of the first booke.

Earneſt buſineſſe ought to be reſreſhed wyth honeſte paſtyme. . . .	Fol. 1.	[A p. 25.]
Shootyng moſt honeſt paſtyme. . . .	3.	[B 29.]
The inuention of ſhootinge. . . .	5.	[C 31.]
Shootyng fit for princes and greate men. 5.	[	32.]
Shootyng, fit for Scholers and ſtudentes. 8.	[D	37.]
Shootyng fitter for ſtudentes than any muſike or Inſtrumentes. . . .	9.	[E 39.]
Youthe ought to learne to ſinge. . . .	11.	[ 41.]

No manner of man doth or can vse to  
much shootynge. . . . 14. [ p. 44.]

Agaynste vnlawfull gammes and namelye  
cardes and dise. . . . 16. [f. 49.]

Shootynge in war. . . . 24. [C. 62.]

Obedience the best propertie of a Soul-  
dyar. . . . 25. [ 63.]

Reasons and authorites agaynste shoot-  
ynge in war with the confutacion of the  
same. . . . 26. [ 65.]

God is pleased with stronge wepons and  
valyaunt feates of war. . . . 28. [ 70.]

The commoditie of Shootynge in war  
throughe the Histories Greke and Latin,  
and all nations Christen and Heathen. 29. [11. 70.]

Vse of shootynge at home causethe  
stronge shootinge in warre. . . . 41. [f. 88.]

Vse of shootynge at home, except men  
be apte by nature, and connyng by teach-  
ynge, doth litle good at all. . . . 43. [ 91.]

Lacke of learnynge to shoote causethe Eng-  
lande lacke many a good archer. . . . 46. [ 95.]

In learnynge any thyng, a man must couete  
to be best, or els he shal neuer attayne to  
be meane. . . . 47. [ 98.]



# TOXOPHILVS,

A,

## The first boke of the schole of shoting.

Philologus.

Toxophilus.



Philologus You studie to fore Toxophile. A

Tox. I wil not hurt my self ouermoche I warraunt you.

Phil. Take hede you do not, for we Phyficians saye, that it is nether good for the eyes in so cleare a Sunne, nor yet holsome for ye bodie, so soone after meate, to looke vpon a mans boke.

Tox. In eatinge and studyng I will neuer folowe anye Phyfike, for yf I dyd, I am sure I shoulde haue small pleasure in the one, and lesse courage in the other. But what newes draue you hyther I praye you?

Phil. Small newes trulie, but that as I came on walkyng, I fortun'd to come with thre or foure that went to shote at the pryckes: And when I sawe not you amonges them, but at the last espyed you lokyng on your booke here so sadlye, I thought to come and holde you with some communication, lest your boke shoulde runne away with you. For me thought by your waueryng pace and earnest lokyng, your boke led you, not you it.





by your leue, doth admitte holosome, honest  
 and manerlie pastimes to be as necessarie  
 to be mingled with sad matters of the minde, as eating  
 and sleping is for the health of the body, and yet we  
 be borne for neither of bothe. And Arist-  
 totle him selfe sayth, yat although it were  
 a fonde and a chylidish thing to be to earnest in pastime  
 and play, yet doth he affirme by the authoritie of the  
 ould Poet Epicharmus, that a man may vse play for  
 earnest matter sake. And in an other place,  
 yat as rest is for labour, and medicines for  
 helth, so is pastime at tymes for sad and weightie  
 studie.

M. Cic. in off.

Arist. de moribus, 10. 6.

Arist. Pol. 8. 3.

**Phi.** How moche in this matter is to be giuen to  
 ye auctoritie either of Aristotle or Tullie, I can not  
 tel, feing sad men may wel ynough speke merily for a  
 merie matter, this I am sure, whiche thing this faire  
 wheat (god saue it) maketh me remembre, yat those  
 husbandmen which rise erliest, and come latest home,  
 and are content to haue their diner and other drinck-  
 ings, broughte into the fielde to them, for feare of  
 losing of time, haue fatter barnes in haruest, than  
 they whiche will either slepe at none time of the daye,  
 or els make merie with their neighbours at the ale.  
 And so a scholer yat purposeth to be a good husband,  
 and desireth to reape and enioy much fruite, of learn-  
 inge, muste tylle and sowe thereafter. Our beste seede  
 tyme, which be scholers, as it is verie tymelye, and  
 whan we be yonge: so it endureth not ouerlonge, and  
 therefore it maye not be let slippe one houre, oure  
 grounde is verie harde, and full of wedes, our horse  
 wherwith we be drawn very wylde as Plato sayth.  
 And infinite other mo lettes whiche wil  
 make a thriftie scholer take hede how he  
 spendeth his tyme in sporte and pleye.

In Phedro.

**Car.** That Aristotle and Tullie spake earnestlie, and  
 as they thought, the earnest matter which they entreate  
 of, doth plainlye proue. And as for your hus-  
 rie, it was more probablie tolde with apt wordes

propre to ye thing, then throughly proued with reasons belongynge to our matter. Far contrariwise I herd my selfe a good husbände at his boke ones faye, that to omit studie somtime of the daye, and sometime of the yere, made asmoche for the encrease of learning, as to let the land lye sometime falloe, maketh for the better encrease of corne. This we se, yf the lande be plowed euerye yere, the corne commeth thinne vp, the eare is short, the grayne is small, and when it is brought into the barne and threshed, gyueth very euill faul. So those which neuer leaue poring on their bokes, haue oftentimes as thinne inuention, as other poore men haue, and as smal wit and weight in it as in other mens. And thus youre husbandrie me thinke, is more like the life of a couetouse snudge that oft very euill preues, then the labour of a good husband that knoweth wel what he doth. And surelie the best wittes to lerning must nedes haue moche recreation and ceasing from their boke, or els they marre them selues, when base and dompysshe wittes can neuer be hurte with continuall studie, as ye se in luting, that a treble minikin string must alwayes be let down, but at suche time as when a man must nedes playe: when ye base and dull string nedeth neuer to be moued out of his place. The same reason I finde true in two bowes that I haue, wherof the one is quicke of cast, tricke, and trimme both for pleasure and profyte: the other is a lugge slowe of cast, folowing the string, more sure for to last, then pleasaunt for to vse. Now fir it chaunced this other night, one in my chambre wolde nedes bende them to proue their strength, but I can not tel how, they were both left bente tyll the nexte daye at after dyner: and when I came to them, purposing to haue gone on shoting, I found my good bowe clene cast on the one side, and as weake as water, that surelie (if I were a riche man) I had rather haue spent a crowne; and as for my lugge, it was not one whyt the worse: but shotte by and by as wel and as farre as euer it dyd. And euen so I am sure that

and wittes, except they be let downe like a treble  
 ng, and vnbeent like a good casting bowe, they wil  
 er last and be able to continue in studie. And I  
 ow where I speake this *Philologe*, for I wolde not  
 e thus moche afore yong men, for they wil take  
 ne occasion to studie litle ynough. But I saye it  
 afore bicause I knowe, as litle studie getteth litle  
 rninge or none at all, so the moost studie getteth  
 t ye moost learning of all. For a mans witte fore  
 cupied in earnest studie, must be as wel recreated  
 h some honest pastime, as the body fore laboured,  
 ft be refreshed with slepe and quietnesse, or els it  
 a not endure very longe, as the noble poete sayeth.  
*that thing wants quiet and meri rest endures but a smal while.*

Ouid.

And I promise you shoting by my iudgement, is  
 moost honest pastime of al, and suche one I am **B**  
 e, of all other, that hindreth learning litle or nothing at  
 , whatsoeuer you and some other saye, whiche are a  
 et dele forer against it alwaies than you nede to be.  
**Phi.** Hindereth learninge litle or nothinge at all?  
 at were a meruayle to me truelie, and I am sure seing  
 u say so, you haue some reason wherewith you can  
 fende shooting withall, and as for wyl (for the loue  
 at you beare towarde shotinge) I thinke there shall  
 ke none in you. Therefore seinge we haue so good  
 sure bothe, and no bodie by to trouble vs: and you  
 willinge and able to defende it, and I so redy and  
 id to heare what may be sayde of it I suppose we  
 nne not passe the tyme better ouer, neyther you for  
 honestie of your shoting, nor I for myne owne  
 ndfake, than to se what can be fayed with it, or  
 aynste it, and speciallie in these dayes, whan so many  
 eth vse it, and euerie man in a maner doeth com-  
 on of it.

**Cor.** To speake of shootinge *Philologe*, trulye I  
 ulde I were so able, either as I my selfe am willing  
 yet as the matter deserueth, but seing with wiffhing  
 : car not haue one nowe worthie, whiche so worthie.

a thinge can worthilie praise, and although I had rather haue anie other to do it than my selfe, yet my selfe rather then no other. I wil not fail to saye in it what I can wherin if I saye litle, laye that of my litle habilitie, not of the matter it selfe which deserueth no lyttle thinge to be sayde of it.

**Phi.** If it deserue no litle thinge to be sayde of it Toxophile, I maruell howe it chaunceth than, that no man hitherto, hath written any thinge of it: wherin you must graunte me, that eyther the matter is noughte, vnworthye, and barren to be written vpon, or els some men are to blame, whiche both loue it and vse it, and yet could neuer finde in theyr heart, to saye one good woorde of it, seinge that very triflinge matters hath not lacked great learned men to sette them out, as gnattes and nuttes, and many other mo like thinges, wherefore eyther you may honestlie laye verie great fault vpon men bycause they neuer yet prayfed it, or els I may iustlie take awaye no litle thinge from shooting, bycause it neuer yet deserued it.

**Tox.** Trulye herein Philologe, you take not so muche from it, as you giue to it. For great and commodious thynges are neuer greatlie prayfed, not bycause they be not worthie, but bicause their excellencie nedeth no man hys prayse, hauinge all theyr commendation of them selfe not borrowed of other men his lippes, which rather prayse them selfe, in spekyng much of a litle thyng than that matter whiche they entreat vpon. Great and good thinges be not prayfed. For who euer prayfed Hercules (sayeth the Greke prouerbe). And that no man hitherto hath written any booke of shoting the fault is not to be layed in the thyng whiche was worthie to be written vpon, but of men which were negligent in doying it, and this was the cause therof as I suppose. Menne that vsed shootyng moste and knewe it best, were not learned: men that were lerned, vsed litle shooting, and were ignorant in the nature of the thyng, and so fewe menne hath bene that hitherto were able to wryte vpon it. Yet howe



longe shotying hath continued, what common wealthes hath mosle vsed it, howe honeste a thyng it is for all men, what kynde of liuing so euer they folow, what pleasure and profit commeth of it, both in peace and warre, all maner of tongues and writers, Hebrue, Greke and Latine, hath so plentifully spoken of it, as of fewe other things like. So what shooting is howe many kindes there is of it, what goodnesse is ioyned with it, is tolde: onelye howe it is to be learned and brought to a perfectnesse amonges men, is not toulde.

*Phi.* Than *Toxophile*, if it be so as you do saye, let vs go forward and examin howe plentifully this is done that you speke, and firste of the inuention of it, than what honestie and profit is in the vse of it, bothe for warre and peace, more than in other pastimes, laste of all howe it ought to be learned amonges men for the encrease of it, which thinge if you do, not onelye I nowe for youre communication but many other mo, when they shall knowe of it, for your labour, and shotying it selfe also (if it coulde speke) for your kyndnesse, wyll can you very moche thanke.

*Toxoph.* What good thynges men speake of shoting and what good thinges shooting bringes to men as my wit and knowlege will serue me, gladly shall I say my mind. But howe the thing is to be learned I will surely leue to some other which bothe for greater experience in it, and also for their lerninge, can set it out better than I.

*Phi.* Well as for that I knowe both what you can do in shooting by experience, and yat you can also speke well ynough of shooting, for youre learning, but go on with the first part. And I do not doubt, but what my desyre, what your loue toward it, the honestie of shoting, the profite that may come thereby to many other, shall get the seconde parte out of you at the last.

*Toxoph.* Of the first finders out of shoting, diuers C  
men diuerslye doo wryte. Claudiane the Claudianus  
in histri.  
poete sayth that nature gaue example of  
shotyng first, by the Porpentine, which doth shote his  
prickes, and will hitte any thinge that fightes with it:

whereby men learned afterwarde to immitate the same in findyng out both bowe and shaftes.

Plinie referreth it to Schythes the sonne of Iupiter. Better and more noble wryters bringe shoting from a more noble inuentour: as Plato, Calimachus, and Galene from Apollo.

Plin. 7. 56.

Yet longe afore those dayes do we reade in the bible of shotinge expreslye. And

In sympo.  
In hym.  
Apollo.  
Gen. 21.

also if we shall beleue Nicholas de Lyra, Lamech killed Cain with a shafte. So this

Nic. de lyra.

great continuance of shoting doth not a lytle praise shotinge: nor that neither doth not a litle set it oute, that it is referred to th[e] inuention of Apollo, for the which poynt shoting is highlye praised of Galene: where he sayth, yat mean craftes be first found out by men or beastes, as weauing by a spider, and fuche other: but high and commendable sciences by goddes, as shotinge and musicke by Apollo. And thus shotyng for the necessitie of it vsed in Adams dayes, for the noblenesse of it referred to Apollo, hath not ben onelie commended in all tungen and writers, but also had in greate price, both in the best commune wealthes in warre tyme for the defence of their countrie, and of all degrees of men in peace tyme, bothe for the honestie that is ioyned with it, and the profyte that foloweth of it.

Galen in ex-  
hor. ad bo-  
nas artes.

**Philol.** Well, as concerning the fyndinge oute of it, litle prayse is gotten to shotinge therby, seinge good wittes maye mooste easelye of all fynde oute a trise-lynge matter. But where as you saye that mooste commune wealthes haue vsed it in warre tyme, and all degrees of men maye verye honestlye vse it in peace tyme: I thynke you can neither shewe by authoritie, nor yet proue by reason.

**Coryphi.** The vse of it in warre tyme, I wyll declare hereafter. And firste howe all kindes and sortes of men (what degree foeuer they be) hath at all tymes afore, and nowe maye honestlye vse it: the example of mooste noble men verye well doeth proue.

Cyaxares the kynge of the Medees, and greate graundefather to Cyrus, kepte a forte of Sythians with him onely for this purpose, to teache his sonne Astyages to shote. Cyrus being a childe was brought vp in shoting, which thinge Xenophon wolde neuer haue made mention on, except it had ben fitte for all princes to haue vsed : feing that Xenophon wrote Cyrus lyfe (as Tullie sayth) not to shewe what Cyrus did, but what all maner of princes both in pastimes and earnest matters ought to do.

Herod. in clio.

Xen. in insti  
Cyril. 1.

Ad Quint.  
Fra. 1. 1.

Darius the first of that name, and king of Persie shewed plainly howe fit it is for a kinge to loue and vse shotynge, whiche commaunded this sentence to be grauen in his tombe, for a Princelie memorie and prayse.

*Darius the King lieth buried here*

Strabo. 15.

*That in shooting and riding had neuer pere.*

Agayne, Domitian the Emperour was so cunning in shoting that he coulde shote betwixte a mans fingers standing as farre of, and neuer hurt him. Comodus also was so excellent, and had so sure a hande in it, that there was nothing within his retche and shote, but he wolde hit it in what place he wolde: as beastes runninge, either in the heed, or in the herte, and neuer mysse, as Herodiane sayeth he sawe him selfe, or els he coulde neuer haue beleued it.

Tranq. Suet.

Herodia. 1.

**I**hi. In dede you praise shoting very wel, in yat you shewe that Domitian and Commodus loue shotinge, fuche an vngracious couple I am sure as a man shall not fynde agayne, if he raked all hell for them.

**T**orophy. Wel euen as I wyll not commende their ilnesse, so ought not you to dispraise their goodnesse, and in dede, the iudgement of Herodian vpon Commodus is true of them bothe, and that was this: that



beside strength of bodie and good shotinge, they hadde no princelie thing in them, which sayng me thinke commendes shoting wonderfullie, callinge it a princelie thinge.

Furthermore howe commendable shotinge is for princes : Themistius the noble philosopher sheweth in a certayne oration made to Theodofius th[e] emperoure, wherin he doeth commende him for. iiii. thinges, that he vsed of a childe. For shotinge, for rydinge of an horse well, and for feates of armes.

Themist.  
in ora, 6.

Moreouer, not onelye kinges and emperours haue ben brought vp in shoting, but also the best commune wealthes that euer were, haue made goodlie actes and lawes for it, as the Persians which vnder Cyrus conquered in a maner all the worlde, had a lawe that their children shulde learne three thinges, onelie from v. yere oulde vnto. xx. to ryde an horse well, to shote well, to speake truthe alwayes and neuer lye. The Romaines (as Leo the[m]perour in his boke of sleighthes of warre<sup>s</sup> telleth) had a lawe that euery man shoulde vse shoting in peace tyme, while he was. xl. yere olde and that euerye house shoulde haue a bowe, and. xl. shaftes ready for all nedes, the omittinge of whiche lawe (sayth Leo) amonges the youthe, hath ben the onely occasion why the Romaynes lost a great dele of their empire. But more of this I wil speake when I come to the profite of shoting in warre. If I shuld rehearse the statutes made of noble princes of Englande in parliametes for the settinge forward of shoting, through this realme, and specially that acte made for shoting the thyrde yere of the reygne of our moost drad foueraygne lorde king Henry the. viii. I could be very long. But these fewe examples specially of so great men and noble commune wealthes, shall stand in stede of many.

Herod. in clio.

Leo de strata-  
tag. 20.

¶ **Phi.** That fuche princes and fuche commune welthes haue moche regarded shoting, you haue well

declared. But why shotinge ought so of it selfe to be regarded, you haue scarcelye yet proued.

**Tor.** Examples I graunt out of histories do shew a thing to be so, not proue a thing why it shuld be so. Yet this I suppose, yat neither great mens qualities being commendable be without great authoritie, for other men honestly to folow them: nor yet those great learned men that wrote fuche thinges, lacke good reason iustly at al tymes for any other to approue them. Princes beinge children oughte to be brought vp in shoting: both bycause it is an exercise moost holsom, and also a pastyme moost honest: wherin labour prepareth the body to hardnesse, the minde to couragiousnesse, sufferyng neither the one to be marde with tenderesse, nor yet the other to be hurte with ydlenesse: as we reade how Sardanapalus and fuche other were, bycause they were not brought vp with outwarde honest payneful pastymes to be men: but cockerde vp with inwarde noughtie ydle wantonnesse to be women. For how fit labour is for al youth, Iupiter or els Minos amonges them of Grece, and Lycurgus amonges the Lacedemonians, do shewe by their lawes, which neuer ordeyned any thing for ye bringyng vp of youth that was not ioyned with labour. And the labour which is in shoting of al other is best, both bycause it encreafeth strength, and preferueth health moost, beinge not vehement, but moderate, not ouerlaying any one part with weryfomnesse, but softly exercisyng euey parte with equalnesse, as the armes and breastes with drawinge, the other parties with going, being not so paynfull for the labour as pleasaunt for the pastyme, which exercise by the iudgement of the best physicions, is most allowable. By shoting also is the mynde honestly exercised where a man alwaies desireth to be best (which is a worde of honestie) and that by the same waye, that vertue it selfe doeth, couetinge to come nighest a moost perfite ende or meane standing betwixte. ii. extremes, escheweing

Cic. 2. Tus.  
Qu.

Gal. 2. de  
san. tuend.

shorte, or gone, or either syde wide, for the which causes Aristotle him selfe sayth that shoting and vertue is very like. Moreouer that shoting of all other is the moost honest pastyme, and hath leest occasion to noughtinesse ioyned with it. ii. things very playnelye do proue, which be as a man wolde saye, the tutours and ouerfeers to shotinge: Daye light and open place where euerye man doeth come, the maynteyners and keepers of shoting, from all vn honest doing. If shotinge faulte at any tyme, it hydes it not, it lurkes not in corners and huddermother: but openly accuseth and bewrayeth it selfe, which is the nexte waye to amendement, as wyse men do saye. And these things I suppose be signes, not of noughtinesse, for any man to disallowe it: but rather verye playne tokens of honestie, for euerye man to prayse it.

Arist. 1. de morib.

The vse of shotinge also in greate mennes chyldren shall greatlye encrease the loue and vse of shotinge in all the residue of youth. For meane mennes myndes loue to be lyke greate menne, as Plato and Isocrates do saye. And that euerye bodye shoulde learne to shote when they be yonge, defence of the commune wealth, doth require when they be olde, which thing can not be done mightelye when they be men, excepte they learne it perfitelye when they be boyes. And therefore shotinge of all pastymes is moost fitte to be vsed in childhode: bycause it is an imitation of moost earnest things to be done in manhode.

Iso. in nic.

Wherefore, shoting is fitte for great mens children, both bycause it strengthneth the body with holsome labour, and pleaseth the mynde with honest pastime and also encourageth all other youth earnestlye to folowe the fame. And these reasons (as I suppose) stirred vp both great men to bring vp their chyldren in shotinge, and also noble commune wealthes so straitelye to commaunde shoting. Therefore seinge Princes moued by honest occasions, hath in al commune wealthes vsed

shotynge, I suppose there is none other degree of men, neither lowe nor hye, learned nor leude, yonge nor olde.

**Phil.** You shal nede wade no further in this matter *Toxophile*, but if you can proue me that scholers and men gyuen to learning maye honestlye shoting, I wyll soone graunt you that all otherfortes of men maye not onelye lesfullie, but ought of dutie to vse it. But I thinke you can not proue but that all these examples of shotinge brought from so longe a tyme, vfed of so noble princes, confirmed by so wyse mennes lawes and iudgements, are sette afore temporall men, onelye to followe them: whereby they may the better and stronglyer defende the commune wealth withall. And nothing belongeth to scholers and learned men, which haue an other parte of the commune wealth, quiete and peaceable put to their cure and charge, whose ende as it is diuerse from the other, so there is no one waye that leadeth to them both.

**Toro.** I graunte *Philologe*, that scholers and lay men haue diuerse offices and charges in the commune wealth, whiche requires diuerse bringing vp in their youth, if they shal do them as they ought to do in their age. Yet as temporall men of necessitie are compelled to take somewhat of learning to do their office the better withal: So scholers maye the boldlyer borowe somewhat of laye mennes pastimes, to maynteyne their health in studie withall. And surelie of al other thinges shoting is necessary for both fortes to learne. Whiche thing, when it hath ben euermore vsed in Englande how moche good it hath done, both olde men and Chronicles doo tell: and also our enemies can beare vs recorde. For if it be true (as I haue hearde saye) when the kynge of Englande hath ben in Fraunce, the preeftes at home bicause they were archers, haue ben able to ouerthrowe all Scotlande. Agayne ther is an other thing which aboue all other doeth moue me, not onely to loue shotinge, to prayse shoting, to exhorte all other to shotinge, but also to

use shoting my selfe: and that is our kyng his moost royall purpose and wyll, whiche in all his statutes generallye doth commaunde men, and with his owne mouthe moost gentlie doeth exhorte men, and by his greate gyftes and rewardes, greatly doth encourage men, and with his moost princelie example very oft doth prouoke all other men to the same. But here you wyll come in with temporal man and scholer: I tell you plainlye, scholer or vnscholer, yea if I were. xx. scholers, I wolde thinke it were my dutie, bothe with exhortinge men to shote, and also with shoting my selfe to helpe to set forwarde that thing which the kinge his wisdome, and his counsell, so greatlye laboureth to go forwarde: whiche thing surelye they do, bycause they knowe it to be in warre, the defence and wal of our countrie, in peace, an exercise moost holsome for the body, a pastime moost honest for the mynde, and as I am able to proue my selfe, of al other mooste fit and agreable with learninge and learned men.

¶ *Phi.* If you can proue this thing so playnly, as you speake it earnestly, then wil I, not only thinke as you do, but become a shooter and do as you do. But yet beware I saye, lest you for the great loue you bear toward shotinge, blindlie iudge of shotinge. For loue and al other to earnest affections be not for nought paynted blinde. Take hede (I saye) least you prefer shotinge afore other pastimes, as one Balbinus through blinde affection, preferred his louer before all other women, although she were deformed with a polypus in her nose. And although shooting maye be mete fometye for some scholers, and so forthe: yet the fittest alwayes is to be preferred. Therefore if you will nedes graunt scholers pastime and recreation of their mindes, let them vse (as many of them doth) Musyke, and playing on instrumentes, thinges mooste femely for all scholers, and mooste regarded alwayes of Apollo and the Muses.

*Cox.* Euen as I can not deny, but some musike is

fit for lerning so I trust you can not chose but graunt, that shoting is fit also, as Calimachus doth signifie in this verse.

*Both merie songes and good shooting deliteth Apollo.* Cal. hym. 2.

Butas concerning whether of them is moste fit for learning, and scholers to vse, you may saye what you will for your pleasure, this I am sure that Plato and Aristotle bothe, in their bokes entreatinge of the common welthe, where they shew howe youthe shoulde be brought vp in. iiii. thinges, in redinge, in writing, in exercise of bodye, and singing, do make mention of Musicke and all kindes of it, wherein they both agre, that Musicke vsed amonges the Lydians is verie ill for yong men, which be studentes for vertue and learning, for a certain nice, foste, and smoth swetnesse of it, whiche woulde rather entice them to noughtines, than stirre them to honestie.

An other kinde of Musicke inuented by the Dorians, they both wonderfully prayse, alowing it to be verie fyt for the studie of vertue and learning, because of a manlye, rough and stoute sounde in it, whyche shulde encourage yong stomakes, to attempte manlye matters. Nowe whether these balades and roundes, these galiardes, pauanes and daunces, so nicelye fingered, so swetely tuned, be lyker the Musike of the Lydians or the Dorians, you that be learned iudge. And what so euer ye iudge, this I am sure, yat lutes, harpes, all maner of pypes, barbitons, sambukes, with other instrumentes euery one, whyche standeth by fine and quicke fingeringe, be condemned of Aristotle, as not to be brought in and vsed amonge them, whiche studie for learning and vertue.

Aristot. pol.  
8. 6.

Pallas when she had inuented a pipe, cast it away, not so muche sayeth Aristotle, because it deformed her face, but muche rather bycause suche an Instrumente belonged nothing to learnynge. Howe suche Instrumentes agree with learning, the goodlye agreement betwixt Apollo god of learninge, and Marsyas the

Satyr, defender of pipinge, doth well declare, where Marfyas had his skine quite pulled ouer his head for his labour.

Muche musike marreth mennes maners, sayth Galen, although some man wil saye that it doth not so, but rather recreateth and maketh quicke a mannes mynde, yet me thinke by reason it doth as hony doth to a mannes stomacke, whiche at the first receyueth it well, but afterwarde it maketh it vnfit, to abyde any good stronge norishynge meate, or els anye holsome sharpe and quicke drinke. And euen so in a maner these Instrumentes make a mannes wit so softe and finoothe so tender and quaiſie, that they be lesse able to brooke, strong and tough studie. Wittes be not sharpened, but rather dulled, and made blunte, wyth  
 /suche sweete softeneſſe, euen as good edges be blonter, whiche menne whette vpon softe chalke stones.

And these things to be true, not onely Plato Aristotle and Galen, proue by authoritie of reason, Herodotus  
in Clio. but also Herodotus and other writers, shewe by playne and euident example, as that of Cyrus, whiche after he had ouercome the Lydians, and taken their kinge Crefus prisoner, yet after by the meane of one Pactyas a verye headie manne amonges the Lydians, they rebelled agaynſte Cyrus agayne, then Cyrus had by an by, broughte them to vtter destruction, yf Crefus being in good fauour with Cyrus had not hertelie desyred him, not to reuenge Pactyas faulte, in shedyng theyr blood. But if he would folowe his counsell, he myght brynge to passe, that they shoulde neuer more rebel agaynſt hym, And yat was this, to make them weare long kyrtils, to ye foot lyke woomen, and that euerye one of them shoulde haue a harpe or a lute, and learne to playe and sing whyche thinge if you do sayth Crefus (as he dyd in dede) you shall ſe them quickelye of men, made women. And thus lutinge and finginge take awaye a manlye stomake, whiche shulde enter and pearce depe and harde studie.



Euen fuche another storie doeth Nymphodorus an olde greke Historiographer write, of one Sefostris kinge of Egypte, whiche storie because it is somewhat longe, and very lyke in al poyntes to the other and also you do well ynoughe remembre it, feynge you read it so late in Sophoclis commentaries, I wyll nowe passe ouer. Therefore eyther Aristotle and Plato knowe not what was good and euyl for learninge and vertue, and the example of wyse histories be vainlie set afore vs or els the minstrelsie of lutes, pipes, harpes, and all other that standeth by fuche nice, fine, minikin fingering (fuche as the mooste parte of scholers whom I knowe vse, if they vse any) is farre more fitte for the womannishnesse of it to dwell in the courte among ladies, than for any great thing in it, whiche shoulde helpe good and sad studie, to abide in the vniuersitie amonges scholers. But perhaps you knowe some great goodnesse of fuche musicke and fuche instrumentes, whervnto Plato and Aristotle his brayne coulede neuer attayne, and therfore I will saye no more agaynst it.

Nymphod.

Comment.  
in Antig.

**Ph.** Well Toxophile is it not ynoughe for you to rayle vpon Musike, excepte you mocke me to? but to say the truth I neuer thought my selfe these kindes of musicke fit for learninge, but that whyche I sayde was rather to proue you, than to defende the matter. But yet as I woulde haue this sorte of musicke decaye amonge scholers, euen so do I wyshe from the bottome of my heart, that the laudable custome of Englande to teache chyl dren their plaine song and prik song, were not so decayed throughout all the realme as it is. Whiche thing howe profitable it was for all fortes of men, those knewe not so wel than whiche had it most, as they do nowe whiche lacke it moste. And therfore it is true that Teucer sayeth in Sophocles.

*Seldome at all good thinges be knowen how good to be  
Before a man fuche thinges do misse out of his handes.*

Sophocles  
in Aiace.

That milke is no fitter nor more naturall for the



bringing vp of children than musike is, both Gallen proueth by authoritie, and dayly vse teacheth by experience. For euen the little babes lacking the vse of reason, are scarce so well filled in suckyng theyr mothers pap, as in hearynge theyr mother syng.

Agayne how fit youth is made, by learning to sing, for grammar and other sciences, bothe we dayly do see, and Plutarch learnedly doth proue, and Plato wiselie did alowe, which receyued no scholer in to his schole, that had not learned his songe before.

The godlie vse of praying God, by singinge in the church, nedeth not my prayse, seing it is so praysed through al the scripture, therefore nowe I wil speke nothing of it, rather than I shuld speke to litle of it.

Besyde al these commodities, truly. ii. degrees of menne, which haue the highest offices vnder the king in all this realme, shal greatly lacke the vse of Singinge, preachers and lawiers, bycause they shal not without this, be able to rule their brestes, for euery purpose. For where is no distinction in telling glad thinges and fearfull thinges, gentilnes and cruelnes, softenes and vehementnes, and suche lyke matters, there can be no great perswasion.

For the hearers, as Tullie sayeth, be muche affectioned, as he is that speaketh. At his wordes be they drawen, yf he stande still in one facion, their mindes stande still with hym: If he thundre, they quake: If he chyd, they feare: If he complayne, they sory with hym: and finally, where a matter is spoken, with an apte voyce, for euery affection, the hearers for the moste parte, are moued as the speaker woulde. But when a man is alwaye in one tune, lyke an Humble bee, or els nowe vp in the top of the church, nowe downe that no manne knoweth where to haue hym: or piping lyke a reede, or roring lyke a bull, as some lawyers do, whiche thinke they do best, when they crye lowdest, these shall neuer greatly mooue, as I haue knownen many wel learned, haue done, bicause theyr voyce was not stayed afore, with learnyng to syng.

For all voyces, great and small, bafe and shril, weke or softe, may be holpen and brought to a good poynt, by learnyng to synge.

Whether this be true or not, they that stand moosle in nede, can tell best, whereof some I haue knowen, whiche, because they learned not to sing, whan they were boyes, were fayne to take payne in it, whan they were men. If any man shulde heare me Toxophile, that woulde thinke I did but fondly, to suppose that a voice were so necessarie to be loked vpon, I would aske him if he thought not nature a foole, for making such goodly instrumentes in a man, for wel vttring his woordes, or els if the. ii. noble orators Demosthenes and Cicero were not fooles, wherof the one dyd not onelie learne to sing of a man: But also was not ashamed to learne howe he shoulde vtter his foundes aptly of a dogge, the other setteth oute no poynte of rhetorike, so fullie in all his bookes, as howe a man shoulde order his voyce for all kynde of matters.

Therefore feinge men by speaking, differ and be better than beastes, by speakyng wel, better than other men, and that singing is an helpe towarde the same as dayly experience doth teache, example of wyse men doth alowe, authoritie of learned men doth approue wherwith the foundation of youth in all good common wealthes alwayes hath bene tempered; surelye if I were one of the parliament house, I woulde not fayle, to put vp a bill for the amendment of this thyng, but because I am lyke to be none this yeare, I wil speake no more of it, at this time.

*Tox.* It were pitie truly *Philologe*, that the thinge shoulde be neglected, but I trust it is not as you say.

*Phi.* The thing is to true, for of them that come daylye to ye vniuersitie, where one hath learned to singe, vi. hath not. But nowe to oure shotinge Toxophile agayne, wherin I suppose you can not say so muche for shotyng to be fitte for learninge, as you haue spoken agaynst Musicke for the same.

Therefore as concerning Musike, I can be content to

graunt you your mynde: But as for shooting, surely I suppose that you can not perfwade me, by no meanes, that a man can be earnest in it, and earnest at his booke to: but rather I thynke that a man with a bowe on his backe, and shaftes vnder hys girdell, is more fit to wayte vpon Robin Hoode, than vpon Apollo or the Muses.

**Tox.** Ouer earnest shooting surely I will not ouer earnestly defende, for I euer thought shooting shoulde be a wayter vpon lerning not a mastres ouer learning. Yet this I maruell not a litle at, that ye thinke a man with a bowe on hys backe is more like Robin Hoode feruaunt, than Apollose, feing that Apollo him selfe in Alcestis of Euripides, whiche tragidie you red openly not long ago, in a maner glorieth saying this verse.

*It is my wont alwaies my bowe with me to beare.*

Euripid. in  
Alcest.

Therefore a learned man ought not to much to be ashamed to beare that some tyme, whiche Apollo god of lerning him selfe was not ashamed always to beare. And bycause ye woulde haue a man wayt vpon the Muses, and not at all medle with shotyng I maruell that you do not remembre howe that the ix. muses their selfe as sone as they were borne, wer put to norse to a lady called Euphemis whiche had a son named Erotus with whome the nine Muses for his excellent shootinge, kepthe euer more companie withall, and vsed dayly to shoote together in ye mount Parnasus; and at last it chaunced this Erotus to dye, whose death the Muses lamented greatly, and fell all vpon theyr knees afore Iupiter theyr father, and at theyr request, Erotus for shooting with the Muses in earth was made a signe, and called Sagittarius in heauen. Therefore you se, that if Apollo and the Muses either were examples in dede, or onelye fayned of wise men to be examples of learninge, honest shoting maye well ynough be companion with honest studie.

**Phi.** Well Toxophile, if you haue no stronger defence of shotinge then Poetes, I feare yf your com-

panions which loue shotinge, hearde you, they wolde thinke you made it but a triflyng and fabling matter, rather then any other man that loueth not shotinge coulde be perswaded by this reason to loue it.

**Toro.** Euen as I am not so fonde but I knowe that these be fables, so I am sure you be not so ignoraunt, but you knowe what suche noble wittes as the Poetes had, ment by such matters: which ostentymes vnder the couering of a fable, do hyde and wrappe in goodlie preceptes of philosophie, with the true iudgement of thinges. Whiche to be true speciallye in Homer and Euripides, Plato, Aristotle, and Galene playnely do shewe: when through all their workes (in a maner) they determine all controuerfies, by these. ii. Poetes and suche lyke authorities. Therfore if in this matter I seme to fable, and nothyng proue, I am content you iudge so on me: seinge the same iudgement shall condemne with me Plato, Aristotle, and Galene, whom in that error I am wel content to folowe. If these oulde examples proue nothing for shoting, what saye you to this? that the best learned and sagest men in this Realme, which be nowe alyue, both loue shoting and vse shoting, as the best learned bisshoppes that be: amonges whome *Philologe*, you your selfe knowe. iiii. or. v. which as in all good learning, vertue and sage-nesse they gyue other men example what thing they shoulde do, euen so by their shoting, they playnely shewe what honest pastime, other men giuen to learning, may honestly vse. That earnest studie must be recreated with honest pastime sufficientlye I haue proued afore, both by reason and authoritie of the best learned men that euer wrote. Then seing pastymes be lesfull, the moost fittest for learning, is to be sought for. A pastyme, saith Aristotle, must be lyke a  
Arist. po. 7.  
 medicine. Medicines stande by contraries, therefore the nature of studying considered, the fittest pastyme shal soone appeare. In studie euery parte of the body is ydle, which thing causeth grosse and colde humours, to gather togyther and vex

scholers verye moche, the mynde is altogyther bent and fet on worke. A pastyme then must be had where euery parte of the bodye must be laboured to separate and lessen suche humours withal: the mind must be vn bent, to gather and fetch againe his quicknesse withall. Thus pastymes for the mynde onelye, be nothing fit for stuentes, bycause the body which is moost hurte by studie, shulde take away no profyte thereat. This knewe Erasmus verye well, when he was  
 here in Cambrige: which when he had ben sore at his boke (as Garret our bookebynder hath verye ofte tolde me) for lacke of better exercise, wolde take his horse, and ryde about the markette hill, and come agayne. If a scholer shoulde vse bowles or tennies, the labour is to vehement and vnequall, whiche is condemned of Galene: the example very ill for other men, when by so many actes they be made vnlawfull.

Running, leaping, and coying be to vile for scholers, and so not fit by Aristotle his iudgement: walking alone into the felde, hath no token of  
 courage in it, a pastyme lyke a simple man  
 which is neither flesh nor fishe. Therfore if a man woulde haue a pastyme holesome and equall for euerye parte of the bodye, pleasaunt and full of courage for themynde, not vile and vnhonest to gyue ill example to laye men, not kepte in gardynes and corners, not lurkyng on the nyght and in holes, but euermore in the face of men, either to rebuke it when it doeth ill, or els to testifie on it when it doth well: let him seke chesely of all other for shotyng.

Philos. Suche commune pastymes as men commonlye do vse, I wyll not greatlye allowe to be fit for scholers: seinge they maye vse suche exercises verye well (I suppose) as Galene him  
 selfe doth allowe.

Aristot.  
 pol. 7. 17.  
 Gal. de. san  
 tuend. 2.

Coryph. Those exercises I remembre verye well, for I read them within these two dayes, of the whiche, some be these: to runne vp and downe an hyll, to clyme vp a longe powle, or a rope, and there hange a

while, to holde a man by his armes and waue with his heeles, moche lyke the pastyme that boyes vse in the churche when their master is awaye, to swinge and totter in a belrope : to make a fiste, and stretche out bothe his armes, and so stande lyke a roode. To go on a man his tiptoes, stretching out th[e] one of his armes forward, the other backward, which if he blered out his tunge also, myght be thought to daunce Anticke verye properlye. To tumble ouer and ouer, to toppe ouer tayle : To fet backe to backe, and se who can heaue an other his heles highest, with other moche like : whiche exercises surelye muste nedes be naturall, bycause they be so childishe, and they may be also holesome for the body : but surelye as for pleafure to the minde or honestie in the doinge of them, they be as lyke shotinge as Yorke is foule Sutton. Therefore to loke on al pastymes and exercises holsome for the bodye, pleasaunt for the mynde, comlye for euery man to do, honest for all other to loke on, profitable to be sette by of euerye man, worthie to be rebuked of no man, fit for al ages persons and places, onely shoting shal appeare, wherin all these commodities maye be founde.

**Phil.** To graunt Toxophile, that studentes may at tymes conuenient vse shoting as moost holsome and honest pastyme : yet to do as some do, to shote hourly daylie, wekelye, and in a maner the hole yere, neither I can prayse, nor any wyse man wyl allowe, nor you your selfe can honestlye defende.

**Toxoph.** Surely Philologe, I am very glad to se you come to that poynte that moost lieth in your stomake, and greueth you and other so moche. But I truste after I haue sayd my mynde in this matter, you shal confesse your selfe that you do rebuke this thing more than ye nede, rather then you shal fynde that any man may spende by anye possibilitie, more tyme in shotinge then he ought. For first and formooft the hole tyme is deuyded into. ii. partes, the daye and the night : whereof the night maye be both occupied in many honest businesfes, and also spent in moche vn-

thriftnesse, but in no wise it can be applyed to shoting. And here you se that halfe oure tyme, graunted to all other thinges in a maner both good and ill, is at one swappe quite taken away from shoting. Now let vs go forward, and se how moche of halfe this tyme of ours is spent in shoting. The hole yere is deuided into. iiii. partes, Spring tyme; Somer, faule of the leafe, and winter wherof the whole winter, for the roughnesse of it, is cleane taken away from shoting: except it be one day amonges. xx. or one yere amonges. xl. In Somer, for the feruent heate, a man maye saye likewyse: except it be somtyme agaynst night. Now then spring tyme and faule of the leafe be those which we abuse in shoting. But if we consider how mutable and chaungeable the wether is in those seasons, and howe that Aristotle him selfe sayth, that mooste parte of rayne fauleth in these two tymes: we shall well perceyue, that where a man wolde shote one daye, he shall be fayne to leaue of. iiii. Now when tyme it selfe graunteth vs but a litle space to shote in, lette vs se if shoting be not hindered amonges all kyndes of men as moche otherwayes. First, yong children vse not, yong men for feare of them whom they be vnder to moche dare not: Iage men for other greater businesse, wyll not: aged men for lacke of strengthe, can not: Ryche men for couetousnesse sake, care not: poore men for cost and charge, may not: masters for their housholde keping, hede not: seruantes kept in by their maisters very oft, shall not: craftes men for getting of their lyuing, verye moche leysure haue not: and many there be that oft begynnes, but for vnaptnesse proues not: and moost of all, whiche when they beshoters gyue it ouer and lyst not, so that generallye men euerye where for one or other consideration moche shoting vse not. Therefore these two thinges, straitnesse of tyme, and euery man his trade of liuing, are the causes that so fewe men shotes: as you maye se in this greate towne, where as there be a thousande good mens bodies, yet scarce. x.



yat vseth any great shoting. And those whome you se shote the moost, with how many thinges are the[y] drawen (or rather driuen) from shoting. For first, as it is many a yere or they begyn to be greate shoters, euen so the greate heate of shotinge is gone within a yere or two: as you knowe diuerse Philologe your selfe, which were sometyme the best shoters, and now they be the best studentes.

If a man faule fycke, farewell shoting, maye fortune as long as he lyueth. If he haue a wrentche, or haue taken colde in his arme, he may hang vp his bowe (I warraunt you) for one season. A litle blayne, a small cutte, yea a filie poore worne in his finger, may kepe him from shoting wel ynough. Breaking and ill luck in bowes I wyll passe ouer, with an hundred mo sere thinges, whiche chaunceth euerye daye to them that shote moost, wherof the leest of them may compell a man to leaue shoting. And these thinges be so trewe and euident, that it is impossible either for me craftelye to fayne them, or els for you iustly to deny them. Than seing how many hundred thinges are required altogyther to giue a man leaue to shote, and any one of them denied, a man can not shote: and seing euery one of them maye chaunce, and doth chaunce euery day, I meruayle any wyse man wyll thynke it possible, that any greate tyme can be spent in shoting at all.

**Phī.** If this be true that you saye Toxophile, and in very dede I can denye nothinge of it, I meruayle greatly how it chaunceth, that those, whiche vse shoting be so moche marked of men, and ofttymes blamed for it, and yat in a maner as moche as those which pleye at cardes and dise. And I shal tell you what I hearde spoken of the same matter. A man no shoter, (not longe agoo) Cardes  
and dyse. wolde defende playing at cardes and dise, if it were honestly vsed, to be as honest a pastime as youre shotinge: For he layed for him, that a man might pleye for a litle at cardes and dyse, and also a man might shote away all that euer he had. He sayd a payre of cardes



cost not past. ii.d. and that they neded not so moche reparation as bowe and shaftes, they wolde neuer hurte a man his hande, nor neuer weare his gere. A man shulde neuer slee a man with shoting wyde at the cardes. In wete and drye, hote and coude, they woulde neuer forsake a man, he shewed what great varietie there is in them for euerye mans capacitie: if one game were harde, he myght easelye learne an other: if a man haue a good game, there is greate pleasure in it: if he haue an ill game, the payne is shorte, for he maye soone gyue it ouer, and hope for a better: with many other mo reasons. But at the last he concluded, that betwixt playinge and shoting, well vsed or ill vsed, there was no difference: but that there was lesse coste and trouble, and a greate deale more pleasure in playinge, then in shotynge.

¶ Cor. I can not deny, but shoting (as all other good thinges) may be abused. And good thinges ungoodlye vsed, are not good, fayeth an honorable bishoppe in an earnest matter then this is: yet we muste beware that we laye not mennes faultes vpon the thing which is not worthie, for so nothing shulde be good. And as for shoting, it is blamed and marked of men for that thing (as I sayde before) which shoulde be rather a token of honestie to prayse it, then any signe of noughtinesse to disallowe it, and that is bycause it is in euerye man his sight, it seketh no corners, it hydeth it not: if there be neuer so litle fault in it, euerye man seeth it, it accuseth it selfe. For one houre spent in shoting is more sene and further talked of, then. xx. nightes spent in dyfing, euen as a litle white stone is sene amonges. iii. hundred blacke. Of those that blame shotinge and shoters, I wyll saye no more at this tyme but this, that beside that they stoppe and hinder shoting, which the kinges grace wolde haue forward, they be not moche vnlyke in this poynt to Wyll Somer the king his foole, which smiteth him that standeth alwayes before his face, be he neuer so worshipfull a man, and neuer greatly lokes for him whiche lurkes behinde an other man his backe, that hurte him in dede.

But to him that compared gamming with shoting somewhat wyll I answere, and bycause he went afore me in a comparison: and comparisons sayth learned men, make playne matters: I wyl surely folowe him in the fame. Honest thynges (sayeth Plato) be knowen from vnhoneft thynges, by this difference, vnhoneftie hath euer present pleasure in it, hauing neyther good pretence going before, nor yet any profit folowing after; which saying descrybeth generallye, bothe the nature of shooting and gamming whiche is good, and which is euyl, verie well.

In phedro.

Gamminge hath ioyned with it, a vayne presente pleasure, but there foloweth, losse of name, losse of goodes, and winning of an hundred gowtie, dropsey diseases, as euery man can tell. Shoting is a peynfull pastime, wherof foloweth health of body quiknes of witte, habilitie to defende oure countrie, as our enemies can beare recorde.

Loth I am to compare these things togyther, and yet I do it not bicause there is any comparison at al betwixte them, but therby a man shal se how good the one is, howe euil the other. For I thinke ther is scarce so muche contrarioufnes, betwixte hotte and colde, vertue and vice, as is betwixte these. ii. thynges: For what so euer is in the one, the clean contrarye is in the other, as shall playnlye appere, if we consider, bothe their beginnynges, theyr encreasynges, theyr fructes, and theyr endes, whiche I wyl soone rydde ouer.

¶ The fyrste brynger in to the worlde of shootynge, was Apollo, whiche for his wisdome, and great commodities, brought amonges men by him, was esteemed worthie, to be counted as a God in heauen. Difyng surely is a bastarde borne, because it is said to haue. ii. fathers, and yet bothe noughte: The one was an vngracious God, called *Theuth*, which for his noughtines came neuer in other goddes companyes, and therefore Homer doth despise onse to name him,

Pla. in. symp.

Plato  
in Phedro.

in all his workes. The other father was a Lydian borne, whiche people for suche gamnes, and other vnthriftnes, as boowlyng and hauntyng of tauernes, haue bene euer had in most vile reputation, in all storyes and writers.

Herodot. 2.  
Clio.

The Fosterer vp of shoting is Labour, ye companion of vertue, the maynteyner of honestie, the encreaser of health and welthinesse, whiche admytteth nothings in a maner in to his companie, that standeth not, with vertue and honestie, and therefore sayeth the ould poete Epicharmus very pretelye in Xenophon, that God selleth vertue, and all other good thinges to men for labour. The Nource of diffe and cardes, is werisom Ydleneffe, enemy of vertue, ye drowner of youthe, that tarieth in it, and as Chaufer doth saye verie well in the Parsons tale, the greene path waye to hel, hauinge this thing appropriat vnto it, that where as other vices haue some cloke of honestie, onely ydlenes can neyther do wel, nor yet thinke wel. Agayne, shooting hath two Tutours to looke vpon it, out of whose companie, shooting neuer stirreth, the one called Daye light, ye other Open place, whyche. ii. keepe shooting from euyl companie, and suffers it not to haue to much swinge, but euermore keepes it vnder awe, that it darre do nothing in the open face of the worlde, but that which is good and honest. Lykewyse, dyfinge and cardynge, haue. ii. Tutours, the one named Solitarioufenes, whyche lurketh in holes and corners, the other called Night an vngratiouse couer of noughtyneffe, whyche two thynges be very Inkepers and receyuers of all noughtyneffe and noughtye thinges, and thereto they be in a maner, ordeyned by Nature. For on the nighte tyme and in corners, Spirites and theues, rattes and mife, toodes and oules, nyghtecrowes and poulcattes, foxes and foumerdes, with all other vermine, and noysome beastes, vse mooste styrringe, when in the daye lyght, and in open places whiche be ordeyned of God for honeste thynges, they darre not ones come, whiche thinge Euripides noted verie well, sayenge.

Xen de dict.  
et fact. Soc.

*It thinges the night, good thinges the daye doth haunt and vse.*

Iphi. in. Tau.

Companions of shoting, be prouidens, good heed giuing, true meatinge, honest comparifon, whyche thinges agree with vertue very well. Cardinge and dyfinge, haue a sorte of good felowes also, goynge commonly in theyr companye, as blynde Fortune, stumbling chaunce, spittle lucke, false dealyng, crafty conueyaunce, braynlesse brawlynge, false forswerynge, whiche good feloes wyll sone take a man by the sleue, and cause him take his Inne, some wyth beggerie, some wyth goute and dropsie, some with thefte and robbery, and feldome they wyl leaue a man before he comme eyther to hangyng or els somme other extreme misery. To make an ende, howe shoting by al mennes lawes hath bene alowed, cardyng and dyfing by al mennes iudgements condemned, I nede not shewe the matter is so playne.

Therefore, whan the Lydians shall inuent better thinges than Apollo, when slothe and ydlenes shall encrease vertue more than labour, whan the nyghte and lurking corners, giueth lesse occasion to vnthriftinesse, than lyght daye and opennes, than shal shotynge and fuche gamninge, be in summe comparifon lyke. Yet euen as I do not shewe all the goodnes, whiche is in shotynge, whan I proue it standeth by the same thinges that vertue it selfe standeth by, as brought in by God, or Godlyelyke men, fostered by labour, committed to the sauegarde of lyght and opennes, accompanied with prouision and diligens, loued and allowed by euery good mannes sentence. Euen lykewyse do I not open halfe the noughtines whiche is in cardyng and disyng, whan I shewe howe they are borne of a desperate mother, norished in ydlenes, encreased by licence of nyght and corners, accompanied wyth Fortune, chaunce, deceyte, and craftines: condemned and banished, by all lawes and iudgements.

For if I woulde enter, to descrybe the monstroufenes of it, I shoulde rather wander in it, it is so brode,

than haue any readye passage to the ende of the matter: whose horriblenes is so large, that it passed the eloquence of oure Englyshe Homer, to compasse it: yet because I euer thought hys sayinges to haue as muche authoritie, as eyther Sophocles or Euripides in Greke, therfore gladly do I remembre these verses of hys.

*Hazardry is very mother of lesinges,  
And of deceyte, and cursed sweringes,  
Blasphemie of Christ, manslaughter, and waste also,  
Of catel of tyme, of other thynges mo.*

¶ *Mother of lesinges*) trulye it maye well be called so, if a man confydre howe manye wayes, and how many thinges, he loseth thereby, for firste he loseth his goodes, he loseth his tyme, he loseth quyknes of wyt, and all good lust to other thinges, he loseth honest companye, he loseth his good name and estimation, and at laste, yf he leaue it not, loseth God, and heauen and all: and in stede of these thinges winneth at length, eyther hangyng or hell.

¶ *And of deceyte*) I trowe if I shoulde not lye, there is not halfe so muche crafte vsed in no one thinge in the worlde, as in this cursed thyng. What false dise vse they? as dise stopped with quicksiluer and heares, dise of a vauntage, flattes, gourdes to chop and chaunge whan they lyst, to lette the trew dise fall vnder the table, and so take vp the false, and if they be true dise, what shyfte wil they make to fet ye one of them with flyding, with cogging, with foysting, with coytinge as they call it. Howe wyll they vse these shyftes, whan they get a playne man that can no skyll of them? Howe will they go about, yf they perceyue an honest man haue money, which list not playe, to prouoke him to playe? They wyl seke his company, they wil let hym paye nought, yea and as I hearde a man ones saye that he dyd, they wil send for hym to some house, and spend perchaunce, a crown on him, and at last wyll one begin to saye: what my masters, what shall we do? shall euerye man playe his xii. d. whyles an apple roste in the fyre, and than we wyll



drinke and departe : Naye wyl an other faye, as falſe as he, you can not leaue when you begyn, and therefore I wyl not playe : but yet yf you wyl gage, that euery man as he hath loſt his. xii. d. ſhall ſit downe, I am content, for ſurely I woulde winne no mannes money here, but euen as much as wolde paye for mye ſupper. Than ſpeketh the thyrde, to the honeſt man that thought not to playe, what wylle you playe your. xii. pence if he excuſe hym, tuſh man wylle the other faye, ſticke not in honeſt company for. xii. d. I wyl beare your halfe, and here is my money.

Nowe al this is to make him to beginne, for they knowe if he be ones in, and be a looſer, yat he wyl not ſticke at his. xii. d. but hopeth euer to gette it agayne, whiles perhaps, he looſe all. Than euery one of them ſetteth his ſhiftes abroche, ſome with falſe diſe, ſome with ſettyng of dyſe, ſome with hauinge outelandiſhe ſyluer coynes guylded, to put away at a tyme for good gold. Than if ther come a thing in controuerſie, muſte you be iudged by the table, and than farewell the honeſt man hys parte, for he is borne downe on euerye ſyde.

Nowe fir, beſyde all theſe thinges they haue certayne termes, as a man woulde faye, appropriate to theyr playing: wherby they wyl drawe a mannes money, but paye none, whiche they cal barres, that ſurely he that knoweth them not, maye ſoone be debarred of all that euer he hath, afore he lerne them. Yf a playne man loſe, as he ſhall do euer, or els it is a wonder, than the game is ſo deuilyſh, that he can neuer leaue : For vayn hope (which hope ſayth Euripides, deſtroyeth many a man and Citie)

dryueth hym on ſo farre, that he can neuer  
In ſuppli.  
 retourne backe, vntyl he be ſo lyght, that he nede feare no theues by the waye. Nowe if a ſimple man happen onſe in his lyfe, to win of ſuche players, than will they eyther entreate him to kepe them company whyles he hath loſt all agayne, or els they will vie the moſte dyuellyſhe faſhion of all, For one of the players that

standeth nexte him, shall haue a payre of falsse dize,  
and cast them out vpon the bourde, the honest man  
shall take them and cast them, as he did the other, the  
thirde shall espye them to be falsse dize, and shall crye  
oute, harde, with all the othes vnder God, that he hath  
falselye wonne theyr moneye, and than there is  
nothyng but houlde thy throte from my dagger, than  
euery man layeth hande on the simple man, and  
taketh all theyr moneye from him, and his owne also,  
thinking himselfe wel, that he scapeth with his lyfe.

*Curfed swerying, blasphemie of Christe.)* These halfe  
verses Chaucer in an other place, more at large doth  
well fet out, and verye liuely expresse, sayinge.

*Ey by goddes precious hert and his nayles  
And by the blood of Christe, that is in Hales,  
Seuen is my chaunce, and thine is sinke and treye,  
Ey goddes armes, if thou falsly playe,  
This dagger shall thorough thine herte go  
This frute commeth of the beched boones twoo  
Forfweringe, Ire, falsnes and Homicide. &c.*

Thoughe these verses be very earnestlie wrytten, yet  
they do not halfe so grisely fette out the horriblenes of  
blasphemy, which suche gamblers vse, as it is in dede,  
and as I haue hearde my selfe. For no man can wryte  
a thing so earnestlye, as whan it is spoken wyth iesture,  
as learned men you knowe do faye. Howe will you  
thinke that suche furiousenes wyth woode countenaun-  
ces, and brenning eyes, with staring and bragging,  
with heart redie to leape out of the belly for swelling,  
can be expressed ye tenth part, to the vttermoost.  
Two men I herd my selfe, whose sayinges be far more  
grisely, than Chaucers verses. One, whan he had lost  
his moneye, sware me God, from top to toe with, one  
breath, that he had lost al his money for lacke of  
sweringe: The other, losyng his money, and heaping  
othes upon othes, one in a nothers necke, moost  
horrible and not spekeable, was rebuked of an honest  
man whiche stode, by for so doynge, he by and by  
starynge him in the face, and clappyng his fiste with all

his moneye he had, vpon the boorde, fware me by the fleshe of God, that yf sweryng woulde helpe him but one ace, he woulde not leue one pece of god vnsworne, neyther wythin nor without. The remembraunce of this blasphemy Philologe, doth make me quake at the heart, and therefore I wyll speake no more of it.

And so to conclude wyth suche gamnyng, I thynke there is no vngracioufenes in all thys worlde, that carieth so far from god, as thys faulte doth. And yf there were anye so desperate a persone, that woulde begynne his hell here in earth, I trowe he shoulde not fynde hell more lyke hell it selfe, then the lyfe of those men is which dayly haunt and vse suche vngracious games.

Phil. You handle this gere in dede: And I suppose if ye had ben a prentice at suche games, you coulde not haue sayd more of them then you haue done, and by lyke you haue had somewhat to do with them.

Cor. In dede, you may honestlye gather that I hate them greatly, in that I speake agaynst them: not that I haue used them greatlye, in that I speake of them. For thynges be knowen dyuerse wayes, as Socrates (you knowe) doeth proue in Alcibiades. And if euery man shulde be that, that he speaketh or wryteth vpon, then shulde Homer haue bene the best capitayne, moost cowarde, hardye, hasty, wyse and woode, sage and simple: And Terence an oulde man and a yong, an honest man and a bawde: with suche lyke. Surelye euerye man ought to praye to God dayly, to kepe them from suche unthriftynesse, and speciallye all the youth of Englande: for what youth doth begynne, a man wyll folowe commonlye, euen to his dyinge daye: whiche thinge Adraustus in Euripides pretelye doth expresse, sayinge.

*What thing a man in tender age hath most in vre*

*That same to death alwayes to kepe he shal be sure*

*Therefore in age who greatly longes good fruite to moue*

*In youth he must him selfe aplye good seede to sowe.*

Euripides  
in suppli.

For the foundation of youth well sette (as Plato doth



faye) the whole bodye of the commune wealth shal floryshe thereafter. If the yonge tree growe coked, when it is boulded, a man shal rather breake it than freyght it. And I thinke there is no one thinge yat crokes youth more then suche vnlesfull games. Nor let no man say, if they be honestly vsed they do no harme. For how can that pastyme whiche neither exerciseth the bodye with any honest labour, nor yet the minde with any honest thinking, haue any honestie ioyned with it. Nor let no man assure hym selfe that he can vse it honestlye: for if he stande therein, he may fortune haue a faule, the thing is more slipperye then he knoweth of. A man maye (I graunt) syt on a brante hyll syde, but if he gyue neuer so lytle forward, he can not stoppe though he woulde neuer so fayne, but he must nedes runne heedling, he knoweth not how farre. What honest pretences, vayne pleasure layeth dayly (as it were entisements or baytes, to pull men forward withall) Homer doeth well shewe, by the Sirenes, and Circes. And amonges all in that shyp there was but one Vlysses, and yet he hadde done to as the other dyd, yf a goddesse had not taught hym: And so lykewyse I thinke, they be easye to numbre, whiche passe by playing honestlye, excepte the grace of God faue and kepe them. Therfore they that wyll not go to farre in playing, let them folowe this counsell of the Poete.

*Stoppe the begynninges.*

**Philola.** Well, or you go any further, I pray you tell me this one thing: Doo ye speake agaynste meane mennes playinge onely, or agaynste greate mennes playinge to, or put you anye difference betwixte them?

**Torophi.** If I shulde excuse my selfe herein, and faye that I spake of the one, and not of the other, I feare lease I shoulde as fondlye excuse my selfe, as a certayne preacher dyd, whome I hearde vpon a tyme speake agaynste manye abuses, (as he sayde) and at last he spake agaynst candelles, and then he fearynge,

least some men woulde haue bene angrie and offended with him, naye sayeth he, you must take me as I meane : I speake not agaynst greate candelles, but agaynst lytle candels, for they be not all one (quoth he) I promysfeyou: And so euerye man laughed him to scorne.

In dede as for greate men, and greate mennes matters, I lyst not greatlye to meddle. Yet this I woulde wyfthe that all great men in Englande had red ouer diligently the Pardoners tale in Chaucer, and there they shoulde perceyue and se, howe moche fuche games stand with theyr worshyppe, howe great foeuer they be. What great men do, be it good or yll, meane men communelye loue to followe, as many learned men in many places do saye, and daylye experience doth playnelye shewe, in coslye apparrell and other lyke matters.

Therefore, seing that Lordes be lanternes to leade the lyfe of meane men, by their example, eyther to goodnesse or badnesse, to whether foeuer they list: and feinge also they haue libertie to lyst what they will, I pray God they haue will to list that which is good, and as for their playing, I wyll make an ende with this saying of Chaucer.

*Lordes might finde them other maner of pleye  
Honest ynough to driue the daye awaye.*

But to be shorte, the best medicine for all sortes of men both high and lowe, yonge and oulde, to put awaye fuche vnlawfull games is by the contrarye, lykewyfe as all phyficians do alowe in physike. So let youthe in steade of fuche vnlesfull games, whiche stande by ydlenesse, by solitarinesse, and corners, by night and darkenesse, by fortune and chaunce, by crafte and subtiltie, vse fuche pastimes as stand by labour : vpon the daye light, in open syght of men, hauynge fuche an ende as is come to by conning, rather then by crafte : and so shulde vertue encrease, and vice decaye. For contrarye pastimes, must nedes worke contrary mindes in men, as all other contrary thinges doo.

And thus we se Philologe, that shoting is not onely

the moost holefome exercife for the bodye, the moost honest paftime for the mynde, and that for all fortes of men: But alfo it is a moost redy medicine, to purge the hole realme of fuche peftilent gamming, wherewith many tymes: it is fore troubled and ill at eafe.

**Phi.** The more honeftie you haue proued by fhooting *Toxophile*, and the more you haue perfwaded me to loue it, fo moche trulye the forer haue you made me with this laft fentence of yours, wherby you plainly proue that a man maye not greatly vfe it. For if fhoting be a medicine (as you faye that it is) it maye not be vfed very oft, left a man fhuld hurt him felfe with all, as medicines moche occupied doo. For Aristotle him felfe fayeth, that medicines be no meate to lyue withall: and thus fhoting by the fame reafon, maye not be moche occupied.

**Cor.** You playe your oulde wontes Philologe, in dalying with other mens wittes, not fo moche to proue youre owne matter, as to proue what other men can fay. But where you thinke that I take awaye noche vfe of fhoting, in lykening it to a medicine: by-cause men vfe not medicines euery daye, for fo fhoulde their bodyes be hurt: I rather proue daylye vfe of fhoting therby. For although Aristotle fayeth that fome medicines be no meate to lyue withall, whiche is true: Yet Hippocrates fayth that our Hippo, de  
med, purg. daylye meates be medicines, to withftande euyll withall, whiche is as true. For he maketh two kyndes of medicines, one our meate that we vfe daylye, whiche purgeth foftlye and flowlye, and in this fimilitude maye fhoting be called a medicine, wherewith dayly a man maye purge and take awaye al vnlefull defyres to other vnlefull pafymes, as I proued before. The other is a quicke purging medicine, and feldomer to be occupied, excepte the matter be greater, and I coulde defcribe the nature of a quicke medicine, which fhoulde within a whyle purge and plucke oute all the vnthrifitie games in the Realme, through which the commune wealth oftentimes is fycke. For not

onely good quicke wittes to learnyng be thereby brought out of frame, and quite marred: But also manly wittes, either to attempt matters of high courage in warre tyme, or els to atcheue matters of weyght and wisdom in peace tyme, be made therby very quafie and faynt. For loke throughout all histories written in Greke, Latyne, or other language, and you shal neuer finde that realme prosper in the whiche fuche ydle pastymes are vsed.<sup>1</sup> As concerning the medicine, although some wolde be miscontent, if they hearde me meddle anye thyng with it: Yet betwixte you and me here alone, I maye the boldyer saye my fantasie, and the rather bycause I wyll onely wyth for it, whiche standeth with honestie, not determyne of it which belongeth to authoritie. The medicine is this, that wolde to God and the kynge, all these vnthriftie ydle pastymes, whiche be very bugges, that the Psalme meaneth on, walking on the nyght and in corners, were made felonye, and some of that punishment ordeyned for them, which is appoynted for the forgers and falsifyers of the kynges coyne. Which punishment is not by me Demost. contra Leptinem. now inuented, but longe agoo, by the mooste noble oratour Demosthenes: which meruayleth greatly that deathe is appoynted for falsifyers and forgers of the coyne, and not as greate punishment ordeyned for them, whiche by theyr meanes forges and falsifyes the commune wealthe. And I suppose that there is no one thyng that chaungeth sooner the golden and syluer wyttes of men into copperye and brassye wayes then disyng and fuche vnlesfull pastymes.

And this quicke medicine I beleue wolde so throwlye pource them, that the daylye medicines, as shoting and other pastymes ioyned with honest labour shoulde easelyer withstande them.

**Phil.** The excellent commodities of shotyng in peace tyme, Toxophile, you haue very wel and sufficiently declared. Wherby you haue so perswaded me,

that God wylling hereafter I wyll both loue it the better, and also vse it the offer. For as moche as I can gather of all this communication of ours, the tunge, the nose, the handes and the feete be no fyttre membres, or instrumentes for the body of a man, then is shotinge for the hole bodye of the realme. God hath made the partes of men which be best and moost necessarye, to serue, not for one purpose onelye, but for manye: as the tunge for speaking and tasting, the nose for smelling, and also for auoyding of all excrementes, which faule oute of the heed, the handes for receyuyng of good thinges, and for puttyng of all harmefull thinges, from the bodye. So shotinge is an exercyse of healthe, a pastyme of honest pleasure, and suche one also that stoppeth or auoydeth all noysome games gathered and encreased by ill rule, as noughtye humours be, whiche hurte and corrupte fore that parte of the realme, wherein they do remayne.

But now if you can shewe but halfe so moche profyte in warre of shotyng, as you haue proued pleasure in peace, then wyll I surely iudge that there be fewe thinges that haue so manifolde commodities, and vses ioyned vnto them as it hath.

**Cor.** The vpperhande in warre, nexte the goodnesse of God (of whome al victorie commeth, as scripture sayth) standeth Mach. 1. 3.  
 chiefly in thre thinges: in the wysedome of the Prince, in the fleyghtes and pollicies of the capitaynes, and in the strength and cherefull forwardnesse of the souldyers. A Prince in his herte must be full of mercy and peace, a vertue moost pleasaunt to Christ, moost agreeable to mans nature, moost profytable for ryche and poore.

For than the riche man enioyeth with great pleasure that which he hath: the poore may obtayne with his labour, that which he lacketh. And although there is nothing worse then war, wherof it taketh his name, through the which great men be in daunger, meane men without succoure, ryche men in feare, bycause they haue somewhat: poore men in care,



bycause they haue nothing: And so euery man in thought and miserie: Yet it is a ciuill medicine, where-with a prince maye from the bodye of his commune wealth, put of that daunger whiche maye faule: or elles recouer agayne, whatsoeuer it hath lost. And therfore as Isocrates doth saye, a prince must be a warriour in two thinges, in conninge and knowledge of all sleightes and feates of warre, and in hauing al necessarye habilimentes belonging to the same. Whiche matter to entreate at large, were ouerlonge at this tyme to declare, and ouermuche for my learning to perfourme.

Ad Nico.

After the wisdom of the prince, are valiaunt capitaynes moost necessary in warre, whose office and dutye is to knowe all sleights and pollicies for all kyndes of warre, which they maye learne. ii. wayes, either in daylye folowing and haunting the warres or els bicause wisdom bought with strypes, is many tymes ouercostlye: they maye bestowe sometime in Vegetius, which entreateth suche matters in Latin metelye well, or rather in Polyenus, and Leo the Emperour, which setteth out al pollicies and duties of capitaynes in the Greke tunge very excellentlye. But cheselye I wolde wissh (and if I were of authoritie) I wolde counsel al the yong gentlemen of this realme, neuer to lay out of theyr handes. ii. authors Xenophon in Greke, and Cæsar in Latyn, where in they shulde folowe noble Scipio Africanus, as Tullie doeth saye: In whiche. ii. authours besydes eloquence a thinge mooste necessary of all other, for a captayne, they shulde learne the hole course of warre, whiche those. ii. noble menne dyd not more wyselye wryte for other men to learne, than they dyd manfully exercise in the fyelde, for other men to followe.

De. Sen.

The strengthe of war lyeth in the souldier, whose chiefe praye and vertue, is obedience towarde his captayne, sayth Plato. And Xenophon being a gentyle authour, mooste christianlye doeth saye, euen by these woordes, that

Obedience.  
Plat. leg. 12.  
Xen. Agef.

that fouldyer which firſte ſerueth god, and than obeyeth  
hys captayne, may boldelie with all courage, hope to  
ouerthrowe his enemy. Agayne, without obedience,  
neither valiant man, ſtout horſe, nor goodly  
harnes doth any good at al. which obedi- Xen. Hippar.  
ence of ye fouldier toward his captane, brought the  
whole empyre of ye worlde, into the Romanes handes,  
and whan it was brought, kepte it lenger, than euer it  
was kept in any common welth before or after.

And this to be true, Scipio Africanus, the moſte  
noble captayne that euer was amonge the Plutarchus.  
Romaynes, ſhewed very playnly, what tyme  
as he went into Afryke, to deſtroye Cartage. For he  
reſtinge hys hooſte by the waye in Sicilie, a daye or twoo,  
and at a tyme ſtanding with a great man of Sicilie, and  
looking on his fouldiers how they exerciſed themſelues  
in keepyng of araye, and other feates, the gentleman  
of Sicilie asked Scipio, wherein lay hys chyefe hope to  
ouercome Cartage: He answered, in yonder feloes of  
myne whom you ſe play: And why ſayth the other,  
bycauſe ſayeth Scipio, that if I commaunded them to  
runne in to the toppe of this high caſtel, and caſt  
them ſelues doune backward vpon theſe rockes, I am  
ſure they woulde do it.

Salluſt alſo doth write, yat there were mo Romanes  
put to death of theyr captaynes for Sal. in. Cat.  
ſetting on their enemyes before they had  
licence, than were for running away out of the fylde,  
before they had foughten. Theſe two examples do  
proue, that amonges the Romaynes, the obedience of  
the fouldyer was wonderfull great, and the feueritie of  
the Captaynes, to ſe the ſame kepte wonderfull ſtrayte.  
For they wel perceyued that an hoſte full of obe-  
dyence, falleth as ſeldome into the handes of theyr  
enemyes as that bodye ſawleth into Jeoperdye, the  
whiche is ruled by reaſon. Reaſon and Rulers beyng  
lyke in offyce, (for the one ruleth the body of man, the  
other ruleth the bodye of the common wealthe) ought  
to be lyke of condicions, and oughte to be obeyed in

all maner of matters. Obedience is nouryshed by feare and loue, Feare is kept in by true iustice and equitie, Loue is gotten by wisdome, ioyned with liberalitie: For where a fouldyer seeth ryghteousnesse so rule, that a man can neyther do wronge nor yet take wronge, and that his capitayne for his wysdome, can mayntayne hym, and for his liberalitie will maintayne him, he must nedes both loue him and feare him, of the whiche procedeth true and vnfayned obedience. After this inwarde vertue, the nexte good poynt in a fouldier, is to haue and to handle his weapon wel, whereof the one must be at the appoyntment of the captayne, the other lyeth in the courage and exercise of the fouldier: yet of al weapons the best is, as Euripides doth say, wherewith with leest

daunger of our self we maye hurt our enemye moost. And that is (as I suppose) artillarie. Artillarie now a dayes is taken for. ii. thinges: Gunnes and Bowes, which how moch they do in war, both daily experience doeth teache, and also Peter Nannius a learned man of Louayn, in a certayne dialogue<sup>3</sup> doth very well fet out, wherein this is most notable, that when he hath shewed excedyng commodities of both. and some discommodities of gunnes, as infinite cost and charge, comberfome carriage: and yf they be greate, the vncertayne leuelyng, the peryll of them that stand by them, the esyer auoydyng by them that stande far of: and yf they be lytle, the lesse both feare and ieoperdy is in them, besyde all contrary wether and wynde, whiche hyndereth them not a lytle: yet of all shotyng he cannot reherse one discommoditie.

**Phi.** That I meruayle greatly at, seing Nannius is so well learned, and so exercised in the authours of both the tungenes: for I my selfe do remembre that shotyng in war is but smally praysed, and that of diuers captaynes in dyuers authors. For first in Euripides (whom you so highly praise) and very well, for Tullie thynketh euerye verse in him to be an authoritie, what I praye you, doth Lycus that ouercame Thebes, say as con-



cernyng shoting? whose words as farre as I remembre, be these, or not muche vnylyke.

*What prayse hath he at al, whiche neuer durst abide,  
The dint of a speares poynt thrust agaiust his side  
Nor neuer bouldie buckeler bare yet in his leste hande  
Face to face his enemies bront stiffelie to wythstande,  
But alwaye trusteth to a bowe and to a fethered flicke  
Harnes euer most fit for him which to flie is quicke,  
Bowe and shafte is Armoure melest for a cowarde*  
*Which dare not ones abide the bronte of battel sharpe and harde.*

Eurip. in  
Herc. furent.

*But he a man of manhode most is by mine assent  
Which with harte and corage bouldie, fullie hath him bent,  
His enemies looke in euery floure floutelie to a bide,  
Face to face, and fote to fote, tide what may be tide.*

Agayne Teucer the best Archer amonges all the Grecians, in Sophocles is called of Menelaus, a boweman, and a shooter as in villaynie and reproche, to be a thing of no price in warre.. Moreouer Pandarus the best shooter in the worlde, whome Apollo hym selfe taught to shoote, bothe he and his shotynge is quyte condemned in Homer, in so much that Homer (which vnder a made fable doth alwayes hyde hys iudgement of thinges) doeth make Pandarus him selfe crye out of shooting, and cast his bowe awaye, and take him to a speare, makynge a vowe that if euer he came home, he woulde breake his shaftes, and burne his bowe, lamentynge greatly, that he was so fonde to leaue at home his horse and charyot wyth other weapons, for the trust yat he had in his bowe. Homer ignifieng thereby, that men shoulde leue shoting out of warre, and take them to other wepons more fitte and able for the same, and I trowe Pandarus woordes be muche what after thys sorte.

Soph in  
Sia. flag.

Iliad. 5.

*Ill chaunce ill lucke me hyther broughte  
Ill fortune me that daye besell,  
Whan first my bowe fro the pynne I roughte  
For Hectors sake, the Grekes to quell.*

*But yf that God so for me shap  
That home agaynz I maye ones come,  
Let me neuer inioye that hap,  
Nor euer twyse looke on the sonne,  
If bowe and shaftes I do not burne  
Whyche nowe so cruel doth serue my turne.*

But to let passe al Poetes, what can be forer said agaynst any thing, than the iudgement of Cyrus is agaynst shotyng, whiche doth cause his Persians beyng the best shooters to laye awaye theyr bowes and take them to sweardes and buckelers, speares and dartes, and other lyke hande weapons. The which thing Xenophon so wyse a philosopher, so experte a captayne in warre hym selfe, woulde neuer haue written, and specially in that booke wherein he purposed to shewe, as Tullie sayeth in dede, not the true historie, but the example of a perfite wise prince and common welthe, excepte that iudgement of chaungyng Artillerie, in to other wepons, he had alwayes thought best to be folowed, in all warre. Whose counsell the Parthians dyd folowe, whan they chased Antonie ouer the mountaines of Media, whiche being the best shoters of the worlde, leste theyr bowes, and toke them to speares and morispiques.

Xen. Cyri.  
Inst. 6.

Epist. 1. ad  
Q. Fra.

Plutarch  
M. Ant.

And these fewe examples I trowe, of the best shooters, do well proue that the best shotinge is not the best thinge as you call it in warre.

**Cor.** As concernyng your first example, taken oute of Euripides, I maruayle you wyl bring it for ye dispraise of shotyng, seyng Euripides doth make those verses, not bicause he thinketh them true, but bicause he thinketh them fit for the person that spake them. For in dede his true iudgement of shoting, he doth expresse by and by after in the oration of the noble captaine Amphytrio agaynst Lycus, wherein a man maye doubt, whether he hath more eloquentlye confuted Lycus sayenge, or more worthelye sette oute the prayse of shootyng.

And as I am aduised, his woordes be muche hereafter as I shall saye.

*Against the wittie giste of shotinge in a bowe* Eurip. in. Herc. fur  
*Fonde and leud woordes thou leudlie doest out throwe,*  
*Whiche, if thou wilt heare of me a woorde or twayne*  
*Quicklie thou mayst learne howe fondlie thou doest blame,*  
*Firste he that with his harneis him selfe doth wal about,*  
*That scarce is lefte one hole through which he may pepe out,*  
*Such bondmen to their harneis to fight are nothinge mete*  
*But soneſt of al other are troden vnder fete.*  
*Yf he be stronge, his felouves faynt, in whome he putteth his trust,*  
*So loded with his harneis must nodels lie in the dust,*  
*Nor yet from death he cannot starte, if ones his weapon breke,*  
*Howe floute, howe strong, howe great, howe longe,*  
*So euer be suche a freke.*  
*But who so euer can handle a bowe sturdie stiffe and stronge*  
*Wherwith lyke haylemanie shaftes he shootes into the thickest thronge:*  
*This profite he takes, that standing a far his enemye he maye spill*  
*Whan he and his full safe shall stande out of all daunger and ill.*  
*And this in War is wisedomes moste, which workes our enemies woo.*  
*Whan we shal be far from all feare and icoperdie of our foe.*

Secondarily euen as I do not greatlye regarde what Menelaus doth say in Sophocles to Teucer, bycause he spake it bothe in anger, and also to hym that he hated, euen so doo I remembre very well in Homer, that when Hector and the Troians would haue set fyre on the greke shippes, Teucer with his bowe made them recule backe agayne, when Menelaus Iliad. 8. tooke hym to his feete, and ranne awaye.

Thirdlye as concerning Pandarus, Homer doth not dispraye the noble gyste of shotynge, but therby euery man is taught, that whatfoeuer, and how good foeuer a weapon a man doth vse in war, yf he be hym Hom. Ili. 5. selfe a couetouse wretche, a foole wythoute counsell, a peacebreaker as Pandarus was, at last he shall through the punishment of God fall into his enemyes handes, as Pandarus dydde, whome Diomedes through the helpe of Minerua miserablye slue.

And bycause you make mencion of Homer, and

Troye matters, what can be more prayse for anye thyng, I praye you, than that is for shootyng, that Troye coulde neuer be destroyed without the helpe of Hercules shaftes, whiche thinge doeth signifie, that although al the worlde were gathered in an army togyther, yet without shotinge they can neuer come to theyr purpose, as Vlysses in Sophocles very plainlye doth faye vnto Pyrrhus, as concernyng Hercules shaftes to be caried vnto Troye.

*Nor you without them, nor without you they do ought,* Soph. phil.

Fourthlye where as Cyrus dyd chaunge parte of his bowemen, wherof he had plentie, into other menne of warre, wherof he lacked, I will not greatlye dispute whether Cyrus did well in that poynt in those dayes or no, bycause it is not playne in Xenophon howe strong shooters the Persians were, what bowes they had, what shaftes and heades they occupied, what kynde of warre theyr enemies vsed.

Xen. Cyri.  
Instit. 6.

But trulye as for the Parthians, it is playne, in Plutarche, that in chaungyng theyr bowes into speares, they brought theyr selfe into vtter destruction. For when they had chased the Romaynes many a myle, through reason of theyr bowes, at the last the Romaynes ashamed of their fleing, and remembryng theyr owlde noblenesse and courage, ymagined thys waye, that they woulde kneele downe on theyr knees, and so couer all theyr body wyth theyr shyldes and targattes, that the Parthians shaftes might flyde ouer them, and do them no harme, which thing when the Parthians perceyued, thinking that ye Romaynes wer forweried with labour, watche, and hungre: they layed downe their bowes, and toke speres in their handes, and so ranne vpon them: but the Romaynes perceyuinge them without their bowes, rose vp manfully, and slewe them euery mother son, saue a fewe that saued them selues with runnyng awaye. And herein our archers of Englande far passe the Parthians, which for suche a purpose, when they

Plu. in. M.  
Anton.

shall come to hande strokes, hath euer redy, eyther at his backe hangyng, or els in his next felowes hande a leaden maule, or fuche lyke weapon, to beate downe his enemyes withall.

**Phī.** Well *Toxophile*, feing that those examples whiche I had thought to haue ben cleane agaynst shoting, you haue thus turned to the hygh prayse of shoting: and all this prayse that you haue now sayd on it, is rather come in by me than sought for of you: let me heare I praye you now, those examples whiche you haue marked of shotyng your selfe: whereby you are, and thinke to persuaue other, yat shoting is so good in warre.

**Tor.** Examples surely I haue marked very many: from the begynning of tyme had in memorie of wrytyng, throughout all commune wealthes, and Empires of the worlde: wherof the mooste part I wyll passe ouer, lest I shoulde be tedious: yet some I wyll touche, bycause they be notable, bothe for me to tell and you to heare.

And bycause the storye of the Iewes is for the tyme moost auncient, for the truthe moost credible, it shalbe moost fitte to begynne with them. And although I knowe that God is the onely gyuer of victorie, and not the weapons, for all strength and victorie (sayth Iudas Machabeus) cometh from heauen: Yet  
Mach. 1. 3.  
 surely strong weapons be the instrumentes wherwith god doth ouercome yat parte, which he wil haue ouerthrowne. For God  
D  
 is well pleased wyth wyse and wittie feates of warre: As in metinge of enemies, for truse takyng, to haue priuile in a bushment earnest men layd  
Mach. 2. 14.  
 for feare of treason, as Iudas Machabeus dyd wyth Nicanor Demetrius capitayne: And to haue engines of warre to beate downe cities with all: and to haue scout watche amonges our enemyes to knowe their counsayles, as the noble captaine  
Mach. 1. 12.  
 Ionathas brother to Iudas Machabeus did in the countrie of Amathie against the mighty hoste of Demetrius. And besyde al this, god is pleased to haue



goodly tombes for them which do noble feates in warre,  
 and to haue their ymages made, and also their cote  
 Armour to be fet aboute theyr tombes, to Mach. 1. 13.  
 their perpetual laude and memorie: as the  
 valiaunt capitayne Symon, dyd cause to be made for  
 his brethren Iudas Machabeus and Ionathas, when  
 they were slayne of the Gentiles. And thus of what  
 authoritie feates of warre, and strong weapons be,  
 shortly and playnelye we maye learne: But amonges  
 the Iewes as I began to tell, I am sure there was  
 nothing so occupied, or dydde so moche good as bowes  
 dyd: infomoeche that when the Iewes had any great  
 vpperhande ouer the Gentiles, the fyrste thing alwayes  
 that the captayne dyd, was to exhort the people to  
 gyue all the thankes to God for the victorie, and not to  
 theyr bowes, wherwith they had slayne their  
 enemyes: as it is playne that the noble Iosue dyd after  
 so many kynges thrust downe by hym. Iosue. 23.

God, when he promyseth helpe to the Iewes, he vseth  
 no kynde of speakyng so moche as this, that he wyll  
 bende his bowe, and die his shaftes in the Gentiles blood:  
 whereby it is manifest, that Deutero. 32  
 eyther God wyll make the Iewes shoote stronge shotes  
 to ouerthrowe their enemyes: or at leeste that shotinge  
 is a wonderful mightie thing in warre, whervnto ye  
 hygh power of God is lykened. Daid in the Psalmes  
 calleth bowes the vessels of death, a bytter Psal. 7. 63.  
 thinge, and in an other place a myghty 75.  
 power, and other wayes mo, which I wyll let passe,  
 bycause euerye man readeth them daylye: But yet  
 one place of scripture I must nedes remembre,  
 which is more notable for ye prayse of shoting, then  
 any yat euer I red in any other storie, and that is,  
 when Saul was slayne of ye Philistians being mightie  
 bowmen, and Ionathas his sonne with him, that was  
 so good a shoter, as ye scripture sayth, that he neuer  
 shot shafte in vayne, and yat the kyngdome after  
 Saules deathe came vnto Daid: the first statute and  
 lawe that euer Daid

made after he was king, was this, that al  
ye children of Israhel shulde learne to shote, Regum. 2. 1.  
according to a lawe made many a daye before yat tyme  
for the setting out of shoting as it is written (sayeth  
Scripture) in *libro Iustorum*, whiche booke we haue not  
nowe: And thus we se plainely what greate vse of  
shoting, and what prouision euen from the begynnynge  
of the worlde for shotyng, was amonge the Iewes.

The Ethiopians which inhabite the furthest part  
South in the worlde, were wonderfull bowmen: in  
fomoche that when Cambyfes king of Herodotus in  
Thalia.  
Persie being in Egypt, sent certayne am-  
bassadours into Ethiope to the kynge there, with many  
great gyftes: the king of Ethiop perceyuinge them  
to be espyes, toke them vp sharply, and blamed  
Cambyfes greatly for such vniust enterprises: but  
after that he had princely entertayned them, he sent  
for a bowe, and bente it and drewe it, and then vn-  
bent it agayne, and sayde vnto the ambassadours, you shall  
commende me to Cambyfes, and gyue him this bowe  
fro me, and byd him when any Persian can shote in  
this bowe, let him set vpon the Ethiopians: In the  
meane whyle let hym gyue thanks vnto God, whiche  
doth not put in the Ethiopians mynde to conquere  
any other mans lande. This bowe, when it came  
amonge the Persians, neuer one man in fuche an in-  
finite host (as Herodotus doth saye) could styrre the  
stryng, saue onely Smerdis the brother of Cambyfes,  
whiche styrred it two fingers, and no further: for the  
which act Cambyfes had fuche enuy at him, that he  
afterward slewe him: as doth appeare in the storye.

Sefostris the moost mightie king that euer was in  
Egypt, ouercame a great parte of the worlde, and that  
by archers: he subdued the Arabians, the Iues, the  
Assyrians: he went farther into Scythia then any man  
els: he ouercame Thracia, euen to the borders of  
Germanie. And in token how he ouercame al men  
he set vp in many places great ymages to his owne  
lykenesse, hauynge in the one hande a bowe, in the



other a sharpe heeded shafte: that men  
myght knowe, what weapon is hooste  
vied, in conquering fo manye people.

Herod. in.  
Euterpe.  
Diod. Sic. 2.

Cyrus, counted as a god amonges the Gentyles, for  
his noblenesse and felicitie in warre: yet at  
the last when he set vpon the Massagetanes  
(which people neuer went without their bowe nor their  
quiuer, nether in warre nor peace) he and all his were  
slayne, and that by shotyng, as appeareth in the storye.

Herod. in clio.

Polycrates the prince of Samos (a very little yle)  
was lorde ouer all the Greke sees, and with-  
stode the power of the Persians, onely by  
the helpe of a thousande archers.

Herod. in thalia.

The people of Scythia, of all other men loued, and  
vied moost shotyng, the hole rycheffe and househoulde  
stuffe of a man in Scythia, was a yocke of oxen, a  
plough, his nagge and his dogge, his bowe and his  
quiuer: which quiuer was couered with the skynne of  
a man, whiche he toke or slewe fyrste in battayle.  
The Scythians to be inuincible by reason of their  
shotyng, the greates voyages of so manye noble con-  
querours spent in that countrie in vayne, doeth well  
proue: But specially that of Darius the myghtie kyng  
of Persie, which when he had taryed there a great  
space, and done no good, but had forweryed his  
hoste with trauayle and hunger: At last the men  
of Scythia sent an ambassadour with. iiii.

Herod. in.  
Melpomen.

gyftes: a byrde, a frogge, a mouse, and.  
v. shaftes. Darius meruaylyng at the straungenesse  
of the gyftes, asked the messenger what they signified:  
the messenger answered, that he had no further com-  
maundement, but onely to delyuer his gyftes, and  
retourne agayne with all spede: but I am sure (sayeth  
he) you Persians for your great wyfdome, can soone  
boulte out what they meane. When the messenger was  
gone, euery man began to say his verditte. Darius  
Iudgment was this, that ye Scythians gaue ouer into  
the Persians handes, their lyues, their hole power,  
both by lande and see, signifyinge by the mouse the

earthe, by the frogge the water, in which they both liue, by ye birde their lyues which lyue in the ayer, by the shaft their hole power and Empire, that was maynteyned alwayes by shotinge. Gobryas a noble and wyfe captayne amonges the Persians, was of a cleane contrary minde, saying, nay not so, but the Sythians meane thus by their gyftes, that except we get vs wynges, and flye into the ayer lyke birdes, or run into ye holes of the earthe lyke myse, or els lye lurking in fennes and marishes lyke frogges, we shall neuer returne home agayne, before we be vtterly vndone with their shaftes: which sentence sanke so sore into their hertes, yat Darius with all spede possible, brake vp his campe, and gat hym selfe homewarde. Yet howe moche the Persians them selues set by shotinge, wherby they encreased their empire so moche, doth appeare by iii. manifest reasons: firste that they brought vppe theyr youth in the schole of shoting, vnto. xx. yere of age, as dyuerse noble Greke authours do saye.

Herod. in clio.

Xenoph. in cyrop.

Strab. ii.

Agayne, bycause the noble kyng Darius thought hym selfe to be prayd by nothyng so moch, as to be counted a good shoter, as doth appeare by his sepulchre, wherin he caused to be written this sentence.

*Darius the King lieth buried here  
That in shoting and riding had neuer pere.*

Strab. 15.

Thirdlye the coyne of the Persians, both golde and siluer had the Armes of Persie vpon it, as is customably vsed in other realmes, and that was bow and arowes: by the which feate they declared, how moch they set by them.

Plutarch. in Agefila.

The Grecians also, but specially the noble Athenieses, had all their strength lyinge in Artillarie: and for yat purpose the cite of Athens had a thousand. men which were onely archers, in dayly wages, to watche and kepe the cite from al ieoperdie and fodein daunger: which archers also shuld cary to prison and warde any misdoer at ye commaunde-

Suidas.

ment of the hygh officers, as playnlye doth appeare in Plato. And surely the bowmen of Athens did wonderful feates in many battels, but specially when Demosthenes the valiaunt captayne slue and toke prifoners all the Lacedemonians besyde ye citie of Pylos, where Nestor fomytyme was lord: the shaftes went so thicke that day (sayth Thucydides) that no man could se theyr enemies. A Lacedemonian taken prifoner, was asked of one at Athens, whether they were floute fellows that were slayne or no, of the Lacedemonians: he answered nothing els but this: make moche of those shaftes of youres, for they knowe neyther floute nor vnfloute: meanyng thereby, that no man (though he were neuer so flout) came in their walke, that escaped without death.

Plato in pro-  
tagora.

Thucyd. 4.

Herodotus descrybing the mighty hooft of Xerxes especially doth marke out, what bowes and shaftes they vsed, signifying yat therin lay their chiefe strenght. And at the same tyme Attoffa, mother of Xerxes, wyfe to Darius, and doughter of Cyrus, doeth enquire (as Aeschylus sheweth in a Tragedie) of a certayne messenger that came from Xerxes hoste, what stronge and fearfull bowes the Grecians vsed: wherby it is playne, that Artillarie was the thing, wherin both Europe and Asia at those dayes trusted moost vpon.

Herod. in  
Polym.

Esch. in Perf.

The best parte of Alexanders hoste were archers as playnelye doth appeare in Arianus, and other yat wrote his life: and those so stronge archers, that they onely, fundrye tymes ouercame their enemies, afore any other neded to fyght: as was sene in the battayl which Nearchus one of Alexanders capitaynes had besyde the ryuer of Thomeron. And therefore as concerning all these kyngdomes and commune wealthes, I maye conclude with this sentence of Plinie, whose wordes be, as I suppose thus: If any man would remembre the Ethiopians, Egyptians, Arabians, the men of Inde,

Arianus. 8.

Plin. lib. 16.  
Cap. 36.

of Scythia, so many people in ye east of the Sarmatians, and all the kyngdomes of the Parthians, he shall well perceyue halfe the parte of the worlde, to lyue in subiection, ouercome by the myght and power of shotinge.

In the commune wealth of Rome, which exceded all other in vertue, noblenesse, and dominion litle mention is made of shoting, not bycause it was litle vsed amonges them, but rather bycause it was bothe so necessarye and commune, that it was thought a thing not necessarye or requyred of anye man to be spoken vpon, as if a man shoulde describe a greate feaste, he woulde not ones name bread, although it be mooste common and necessary for all : but surely yf a feaste beyng neuer so great, lacked bread, or had fewfly and noughty bread, all the other daynties shulde be vnfaury, and litle regarded, and than woulde men talke of the commodity of bread, whan they lacke it, that would not ones name it afore, whan they had it : And euen so dyd the Romaynes as concerninge shootyng. Seldome is shootinge named, and yea it dyd the mooste good in warre, as didde appere, verye playnlye in that battell, whiche Scipio Aphricanus had with the Numantines in Spayne, whome he coulde neuer ouercome, before he sette bowemen amonges his horse men, by whose myght they were clean vanquished.

Agayne, Tiberius fyghtyng with Armenius and Inguiomerus princis of Germanie, had one wing of archers on horseback, an other of archers on foot, by whose might the Germanes were slayne downe ryghte, and so scattered and beate oute of the feelde, that the chase lasted. x. myles, the Germanes clame vp in to trees for feare, but the Romanes dyd fetch them downe with theyr shaftes as they had ben birdes, in whyche battell the Romaynes lost fewe or none, as doth appeare in the historie.

But as I began to saye, the Romaynes dyd not so muche prayse the goodnesse of shootinge, whan they had it, as they dyd lament the lacke of it, whan they

Cor, Tac. 2

wanted it, as Leo the. v. the noble Emperour doth playnly testifie in fundrie places in those bookes whiche he wrote in Greke, of the fleyghtes and pollicies of warre.<sup>2</sup>

**Phil.** Surelie of that booke I haue not heard before, and howe came you to the fyghte of it.

**Tor.** The booke is rare trulie, but this laste yeare when master Cheke translated the sayd booke out of greke in to Latin, to ye kinges maiestie, he of his gentlenesse, wolde haue me very ofte in hys chamber, and for the familiaritie that I had wyth hym, more than manye other, woulde suffer me to reade of it, whan I woulde, the whiche thinge to do, surelye I was very desirous and glad, because of the excellent handelynge of all thynges, that euer he taketh in hande. And verily *Philologe*, as ofte as I remembre the departynge of that man from the vniuersitie, (whiche thinge I do not seldome) so ofte do I well perceyue our moste helpe and futheraunce to learnynge, to haue gon awaye with him. For by ye great commoditie yat we toke in hearyng hym reade priuatly in his chambre, all Homer, Sophocles, and Euripides, Herodotus, Thucydides, Xenophon, Ifocrates and Plato, we feeles the great discommoditie in not hearynge of hym, Aristotle and Demosthenes, whiche. ii. authours with all diligence last of all he thought to haue redde vnto us. And when I consider howe manye men he succoured with his helpe, and hys ayde to abyde here for learninge, and howe all men were prouoked and styrred vp, by his counsell and daylye example, howe they shulde come to learning, surely I perceyue that sentence of Plato to be true, which sayeth that there is nothyng better in any common wealthe, than that there shoulde be alwayes one or other, excellent passyng mar, whose lyfe and vertue, shoulde plucke forwarde the will, diligence, laboure and hope of all other, that folowynge his footeysteppes, they myght comme to the same ende, wherevnto labour, lerning and vertue, had conueied him before. The great hinderance of learning, in lackynge thys man greatly I shulde lament, if this dif-

commoditie of oures, were not ioyned with the commoditie and health, of ye hole realme, for which purpose, our noble king full of wysedome hath called vp this excellent man full of learnynge, to teache noble prince Edward, an office ful of hope, comforte and solace to al true hertes of England: For whome al England dayly doth praye, yat he passing his Tutour in learnynge and knowledge folowyng his father in wysedome and felicitie, accordyng to yat example which is set afore his eyes, may so fet out and mayntayne goddes worde to the abolishment of al papistry, the confuson of al heresie, that thereby he feared of his ennemies, loued of al his subiectes, maye bring to his own glory, immortal fame and memorie, to this realme, welthe, honour, and felicitie, to true and vnfayned religion perpetuall peace, concorde, and vnitie.

Cor. Tac. 2.

But to retourne to shootynge agayne, what Leo sayeth of shootynge amonges the Romaynes, hys woordes, be so muche for the prayse of shootynge, and the booke also so rare to be gotten, that I learned the places by harte, whyche be as I suppose, euen thus. Fyrste in his sixte booke, as concerning what harneys is best: Lette all the youth of Rome be compelled to vse shootyng, eyther more or lesse, and alwayes to bear theyr bowe and theyr quiuer aboute with them, untill they be. xl. yeares ould.

For sithens shootynge was neglected and decayed among the Romaynes, many a battayle and fyeelde hath been loste. Agayne in the ii. booke and. 50. chapiter, (I call that by bookes and chapiters, whyche the greke booke deuideth by chapters and paragraphes) Let your souldyers haue theyr weapons wel appoynted and trimmed, but aboue all other thynges regarde moste shootinge, and therefore lette men when there is no warre, vse shootynge at home; For the leauynge of, onely of shotynge, hath broughte in ruyne and decaye, the hole Empire of Rome. Afterwarde he commaundeth agayne, hys capytayne by these wordes: Arme your hoste as I

Leo. ii. 50.



haue appoynted you, but specially with  
 bowe and arrowes plentie. For shootynge  
 is a thinge of muche myghte and power in warre,  
 and chyevely agaynst the Sarracenes and Turkes, whiche  
 people hath all their hope of victorie in theyr bowe  
 and shaftes: Befydes all this, in an other place, he  
 wryteth thus to his Captayne: Artillerie is easie to be  
 prepared, and in time of great nede, a thinge moste  
 profitable, therefore we straytlye commaunde you to  
 make proclamation to al men vnder our dominion.  
 which be eyther in war or peace, to all  
 cities, borowes and townes, and fynally to  
 all maner of men, that euerye seare persone haue bowe  
 and shaftes of his owne, and euerye houle befyde this,  
 to haue a standing bearyng bowe, and. xl. shaftes  
 for all nedes, and that they exercise them selues in  
 holtes, hilles, and dales, playnes and wodes, for all  
 maner of chaunces in warre.

Leo. 18. 21.

Leo. 20. 79.

Howe muche shooting was vsed among the olde  
 Romanes and what meanes noble captaynes and Em-  
 perours made, to haue it encrease amonge them, and  
 what hurte came by the decaye of it, these wordes, of  
 Leo the emperour, which in a maner I haue reherfed  
 woorde for woorde, playnly doth declare. And yet  
 shotynge, although they set neuer so muche by it, was  
 neuer so good than, as it is nowe in Englande, whiche  
 thinge to be true, is very probable, in that Leo doth  
 saye, that he woulde haue his souldiers take of theyr  
 arrowe heads, and one shote at an other, for theyr  
 exercise, whiche playe yf Englyshe archers vsed, I  
 thinke they shoulde fynde smal play and  
 lesse pleasure in it at all.

Leo. 7. 18.

The great vpperhande maynteyned alwayes in warre  
 by artillery, doeth appeare verye playnlye by this reason  
 also, that whan the Spanyardes, franchmen, and ger-  
 manes, grekes, macedonians, and egyptians, eche contry  
 vsing one singuler weapon, for whyche they were greatlye  
 feared in warre, as the Spanyarde *Lancea*, the Franche-  
 man *Gesa*, the German *Framea*, the Grecian *Machera*,



the Macedonian *Sariffa*, yet coulde they not escape, but be subiectes to the Empire of Rome, whan the Pertians hauyng all theyr hope in artillerie, gaue no place to them, but ouercame the Romanes, ofter than the Romaines them, and kepte battel with them, many an hundred yeare, and slue the ryche Crassus and hys son wyth many a stoute Romaine more, with their bowes. They draue Marcus Antonius ouer the hylles of Media in Armenia, to his great shame and reproch. They slue Iulianus Apostata, and Antonius Caracalla, they helde in perpetual pryson, ye most noble emperour Valerian in despite of all the Romaines and many other princes, whiche wrote for his delyueraunce, as Bel solis called kynge of kynges, Valerius kynge of Cadusia, Arthabesdes kyng of Armenia, and many other princes more, whom ye Parthians by reason of theyr artillerie, regarded neuer one whitte, and thus with the Romaines, I maye conclude, that the borders of theyr empyre were not at the sunne ryfinge and sunne settinge, as Tullye sayeth: but so farre they went, as artillerie woulde gyue them leaue. For I thinke all the grounde that they had, eyther northewarde, farther than the borders of Scythia, or Eastewarde, farther than the borders of Parthia, a man myght haue boughte with a small deale of money, of whiche thyng surely shotyng was the cause.

From the same contrie of Scythia the Gothians Hunnes, and Wandaliens came wyth the same wepons of artillarie, as Paulus Diaconus doth saye, and so beraste Rome of her empyre wyth fyre, spoyle, and waste, so yat in suche a learned citie was lefte scarce one man behynde, that had learnyng or leysoure to leue in writyng to them whiche shoulde come after howe so noble an Empyre, in so shorte a whyle, by a rable of banyshed bondemen, wythoute all order and pollicie, saue onelye theyr naturalle and daylye exercise in artillarye, was broughte to suche thraldome and ruine.

After them the Turkes hauing an other name, but yet

M. Crass.  
Plutarch.  
M. Ant.  
Iuliano.

Paul Diac.

the same people, borne in Scythia, brought  
 vp onely in artillarie, by the same weapon F Mela. 1.  
 haue subdued and beraft from the Christen men all  
 Asia and Aphrike (to speake vpon,) and the moost  
 noble countries of Europe, to the greate diminishing of  
 Christe his religion, to the great reproche of cowardyse  
 of al christianitie, a manifest token of gods high wrath  
 and displeasure ouer the synne of the worlde, but  
 speciallye amonges Christen men, which be on slepe  
 made drunke with the frutes of the flesh, as infidelitie,  
 disobedience to Goddes worde, and heresie, grudge,  
 illwyll, stryfe, open battayle, and priuie enuye,  
 coueytousnesse, oppression, vnmercifulnesse, with in-  
 numerable fortes of vnspeakeable daylye bawdrye:  
 which thinges surely, yf God holde not his holy hand  
 ouer vs, and plucke vs from them, wyl bryng vs to a  
 more Turkishnesse and more beastlye blynde barbarous-  
 nesse: as callyng ill thinges good, and good thynges ill,  
 contemnyng of knowledge and learnynge, settynge at  
 nought, and hauyng for a fable, God and his high  
 prouidence, wyll bring vs (I say) to a more vngacious  
 Turkishnesse (if more Turkishnesse can be then this)  
 than if the Turkes had sworne, to bring al Turkye  
 agaynst vs. For these frutes surelye must nedes  
 sprynge of such seede, and such effect nedes folowe  
 of suche a cause: if reason, truthe, and God, be not  
 altered, but as they are wont to be. For surely no  
 Turkysh power can ouerthrowe vs, if Turkysh lyfe  
 do not cast vs downe before.

If god were wyth vs, it buted not the turke to be  
 agaynst vs, but our vnfaythful sinfull lyuynge, which is  
 the Turkes moder, and hath brought hym vp hitherto,  
 muste nedes turne god from vs, because syn and he  
 hath no felowshyp together. If we banished ill lyuynge  
 out of christendome, I am sure the Turke shulde not  
 onelye, not ouercome vs, but scarce haue an hole to  
 runne in to, in his own countrye.

But Christendome nowe I may tell you Philologe is  
 muche lyke a man that hath an ytche on him, and lyeth

dronke also in his bed, and though a thefe come to the clore, and heaueth at it, to come in, and fleye hym, yet he lyeth in his bed, hauinge more pleafure to lye in a flumber and fcratche him felfe wher it ytcheth euen to the harde bone, than he hath redynes to ryfe up luftelye, and dryue him awaye that woulde robbe hym and fleye hym. But I trufte Chriſte wyl fo lyghten and lyfte vp Chriſten mennes eyes, that they ſhall not ſlepe to death, nor that the turke Chriſtes open enemy, ſhall euer boſte that he hath quyte ouerthrowen vs. But as I began to tell you, ſhootynge is the cheſe thinge, wherewith God ſuffereth the turke to punyſh our noughtie liuinge wyth all: The youthe there is brought vp in Casp. de re-  
bus Turc. ſhootyng, his priuie garde for his own perſon, is bowmen, the might of theyr ſhootynge is wel knowne of the Spanyardes, whiche at the towne called Newecaſtell in Illirica, were quyte ſlayne vp, of the turkes arrowes: whan the Spanyardes had no uſe of theyr gunnes, by reaſon of the rayne. And nowe laſt of all, the emperour his maieſtie him ſelfe, at the Citie of Argier in Aphricke had his hooſte fore handeled wyth the Turkes arrowes, when his gonnes were quite diſpatched and ſtode him in no ſeruice, bycauſe of the raine that fell, where as in ſuche a chaunce of raine, yf he had had bowmen, ſurelye there ſhoote myghte peraduenture haue bene a litle hindred, but quite diſpatched and marde, it coulde neuer haue bene.

But as for the Turkes I am verie to talke of them partlye becauſe I hate them, and partlye bycauſe I am now affectioned euen as it were a man that had bene longe wanderyng in ſtraunge contries and would fayne be at home to ſe howe well his owne frendes proſper and leade theyr lyfe, and ſurelye me thincke I am verie merye at my harte to remember how I ſhal finde at home in Englande amonges Englyſh men, partlye by hyſtories, of them that haue gone afore vs, agayne by experience of them whych we knowe, and lyue with vs as greate noble feates of warre doone by Artillarye, as euer was done at any tyme in any other common

welthe. And here I must nedes remember a certaine Frenchman called Textor, that writeth a boke whiche he nameth *Officina*,<sup>4</sup> wherein he weueth vp many brokenended matters and fettes out much riraffe, pelfery, trumpery, baggage and beggerie ware clamparde vp of one that would seme to be fitter for a shop in dede than to write any boke. And amonges all other yll packed vp matters, he thrustes vp in a hepe togyther all the good shoters that euer hath bene in the worlde as he saythe hymselfe, and yet I trow *Philologe* that of all the examples whiche I now by chaunce haue reherfed out of the best Authors both in greke and latin, Textor hath but. ii. of them, which. ii. surely yf they were to reken agayne, I wold not ones name them, partly bycause they were noughtie persons, and shoting somoche the worse, bycause they loued it, as Domitian and Commodus the emperours: partelye bycause Textor hath them in his boke, on whom I loked on bychaunce in the bookebynders shope, thynkyng of no fuche matter. And one thing I wyl say to you *Philologe*, that if I were disposed to do it, and you hadde leysure to heare it, I coulde soone do as Textor doth, and reken vp fuche a rable of shoters that be named here and there in poetes, as wolde holde vs talkyng whyles tomorowe: but my purpose was not to make mention of those which were feyned of Poetes for theyr pleasure, but of fuche as were proued in histories for a truthe: but why I bringe in Textor was this: At laste when he hath reckened all shoters that he can, he sayeth thus, Petrus Crinitus<sup>5</sup> wryteth, that the Scottes whiche dwell beyonde Englande be verye excellent shoters, and the best bowmen in warre. This sentence whether Crinitus wrote it more leudly of ignoraunce, or Textor confirmeth it more piuyshlye of enuye, may be called in question and doubte: but this surelye do I knowe very well that Textor hath both red in Gaguinus the Frenche hystorie,<sup>6</sup> and also hath hearde his father or graundfather taulke (except perchaunce he was borne

Textor.

P. Crin. 3. 10.

equitie, through euery parte of this his realme, as neuer was sene afore.

To fuche a Prince of fuche a wysdome, God hath reserued this mooste noble attonement : wherby neither we shalbe any more troubled, nor the Scottes with their best countries any more destroyed, nor ye see, whiche God ordeyneth profytable for both, shall from eyther be any more stopped : to the great quietnesse, wealth, and felicitie of all the people dwellynge in this Ile, to the high renoume and prayse of our moost noble kyng, to the feare of all maner of nacions that owe ill wyll to either countrie, to the hygh pleafure of God, which as he is one, and hateth al diuision, so is he best of all pleased, to se thinges which be wyde and amyffe, brought to peace and attonement. But Textor (I beshrowe him) hath almooste broughte vs from our communication of shoting. Now sir by my iudgement, the Artillarie of England farre exceedeth all other realmes : but yet one thing I doubt and longe haue surely in that point doubted, when, or by whom, shotyng was first brought in to Englande, and for the same purpose as I was ones in companye wyth fyr Thomas Eliot knight, which surelie for his lerning in all kynde of knowlege bringeth much worthyp to all the nobilitie of Englande, I was so bould to aske hym, yf he at any tyme, had marked any thing, as concernynge the bryngynge in of shootynge in to Englande : he aunswered me gentlye agayne, that he had a worcke in hand which he nameth, *De rebus memorabilibus Angliae*, which I trust we shal se in print shortlye,<sup>7</sup> and for the accompyshmente of that boke, he had read and perused ouer many olde monumentes of Englande, and in sekynge for that purpose, he marked this of shootynge in an excedyng olde cronicle, the which had no name, that what tyme as the Saxons came first into this realme in kyng Vortigers dayes, when they had bene here a whyle and at last began to faull out with the Brittons, they troubled and subdewed the Brittons wyth nothyng so much, as with theyr



bowe and shaftes, whiche wepon beyng straunge and not sene here before, was wonderfull terrible vnto them, and this beginninge I can thynke verie well to be true. But now as concerning many examples for the prayse of English archers in warre, surely I wil not be long in a matter yat no man doubteth in, and those few yat I wil name, shal either be proued by ye histories of our enemies, or els done by men that nowe liue.

Kynge Edward the thirde at the battel of Cressie ageinst Philip ye Frenche king as Gaguinus the french Historiographer plainlye doeth tell, slewe that daye all the nobilite of Fraunce onelye wyth hys archers.

Such lyke battel also fought ye noble black prince Edward beside Poeters, where Iohn ye french king with hys sonne and in a maner al ye peres of Fraunce were taken beside. xxx. thousand. which that daye were slayne, and verie few Englyshe men, by reason of theyr bowes.

Kynge Henrie the fiste a prince pereles and moste vyctoriouse conqueroure of all that euer dyed yet in this parte of the world, at the battel of Agin court with. vii. thousand. fyghtynge men, and yet many of them fycke, beyng suche Archers as the Cronycle sayeth that mooste parte of them drewe a yarde, slewe all the Cheualrie of Fraunce to the number of .XL. thousand. and moo, and lost not paste. xxvi. Englyshe men.

The bloudye Ciuil warre of England betwixt the house of Yorke and Lancaster, where shaftes slewe of both sydes to the destruction of mannye a yoman of Englande, whom foreine battell coude neuer haue subdewed bothe I wyll passe ouer for the pytyefulnesse of it, and yet may we hyghelye prayse GOD in the remembraunce of it, seyng he of hys prouydence hath so knytte together those. ii. noble houses, with so noble and pleafunte a flowre.

The excellent prince Thomas Hawarde nowe Duke of Northfolk, for whose good prosperite with al his noble familie al English hertes dayly doth pray with bowmen

of England flew kyng Iamie with many a noble Scot euen brant agenst Flodou hil, in which battel ye stout archers of Cheshire and Lancashire for one day bestowed to ye death for their prince and country sake, hath gotten immortall name and prayse for euer.

The feare onely of Englysh Archers hathe done more wonderfull thinges than euer I redde in anye historye greke or latin, and moost wonderfull of all now of late beside Carlile betwixt Eske and Leuen at Sandy fikes, where the hoole nobilite of Scotlande for fere of the Archers of Englonde (next the stroke of God) as both Englysh men and Scotyshe men that were present hath toulde me were drowened and taken prisioners.

Nor that noble acte also, whyche althoughe it be almost lost by tyme, commeth not behynd in worthinesse, whiche my synguler good frende and Master Sir William Walgraue and Sir George Somers set dyd with with a few Archers to ye number as it is sayd of. xvi. at the Turne pike besyde Hammes where they turned with so fewe Archers, so many Frenchemen to flight, and turned so many oute of theyr Iackes, whych turne turned all fraunce to shame and reproche and those. ii. noble knightes to perpetuall prayse and fame.

And thus you se Philologe, in al countries Asia, Aphrike and Europe, in Inde, Aethiop, Aegypt and Iurie, Parthia, Persia, Greece, and Italie, Schythia, Turkey, and Englonde, from the begynninge of the world euen to thys daye, that shotyng hath had the cheife stroke in warre.

Phi. These examples surelye apte for the prayse of shotyng, nor feyned by poetes, but proued by trewe histories, distinct by tyme and order, hath delyted me excedyng muche, but yet me thynke that all thys prayse belongeth to stronge shootyng and drawyng of myghtye bowes not to prickyng and nere shotinge, for which cause you and many other bothe loue and vse shootyng.

Tax. Euer more Philologe you wyl haue some ouertwhart reason to drawe forth the more communica-



tion withall, but neuerthelesse you shall perceauie ii you wyl, that vse of prickyng, and desyre of nere shootyng at home, are the onely causes of stronge shootyng in warre, and why? for you se, that the strongest men, do not drawe alwayes the strongest shoote, whiche thyng prouethe that drawinge stronge, liethe not so muche in the strength of man, as in the vse of shotyng, And experience teacheth the same in other thynges, for you shal se a weake smith, whiche wyl wyth a lipe and turnyng of his arme, take vp a barre of yron, yat another man thrife as stronge, can not stirre. And a stronge man not vsed to shote, hath his armes breste and shoulders, and other partes where-with he shuld drawe stronglye, one hindering and stop-pinge an other, euen as a dosen stronge horses not vsed to the carte, lettes and troubles one another. And so the more stronge man not vsed to shote, shootes moost vnhanfumlye, but yet if a strong man with vse of shooting coulede applye all the partes of hys bodye togyther to theyr moost strengthe, than should he both drawe stronger than other, and also shoote better than other. But nowe a stronge man not vsed to shoote, at a girde, can heue vp and plucke in funder many a good bowe, as wild horses at a brunte doth race and pluck in peces many a stronge carte. And thus stronge men, without vse, can do nothyng in shoting to any purpose, neither in warre nor peace, but if they happen to shoote, yet they haue done within a shoote or two when a weake man that is vsed to shoote, shal serue for all tymes and purposes, and shall shoote. x. shaftes, agaynst the others. iiii. and drawe them vp to the poynte, euerye tyme, and shoote them to the mooste aduantage, drawyng and withdrawing his shafte when he list, markyng at one man, yet let driuyng at an other man: whyche thynges in a set battayle, although a man, shal not alwayes vse, yet in bickerynges, and at ouerthwarte meatinges, when fewe archers be togyther, they do mooste good of all.

Agayne he that is not vsed to shoote, shall euermore

with vntowardnesse of houldynge his bowe, and nockynge his shafte, not looking to his stryng betyme, put his bowe alwayes in ieoperdy of breakynge, and than he were better to be at home, moreouer he shal shoote very fewe shaftes, and those full vnhandsumlye, some not halfe drawen, some to hygh and some to lowe, nor he can not driue a shoote at a tyme, nor stoppe a shoote at a neede, but oute muste it, and verye ofte to euel prose.

**Phi.** And that is best I trow in war, to let it go, and not to stoppe it.

**Tox.** No not so, but somtyme to houlde a shafte at the heade, whyche if they be but few archers, doth more good with the feare of it, than it shoulde do if it were shot, with the stroke of it.

**Phi.** That is a wonder to me, yat the feare of a displeasure, shoulde do more harme than the displeasure it selfe.

**Tox.** Yes, ye knowe that a man whiche fereth to be banyshed, out of hys cuntrye, can neyther be mery, eate, drynke nor sleape for feare, yet when he is banished in dede, he slepeth and eateth, as well as any other. And many menne doubtyng and fearyng whether they shoulde dye or no, euen for verye feare of deathe, preuenteth them selfe with a more bytter deathe then the other death shoulde haue bene in dede. And thus feare is euer worse than the thyng feared, as is partelye proued, by the communication of Cyrus and Tigranes, the kynges sunne of Armenie, in Xenophon.

Ciri, ped. 3.

**Phi.** I graunte Toxophile, that vse of shotyng maketh a man drawe strong, to shoote at most aduantage, to kepe his gere, whiche is no small thinge in war, but yet me thinke, that the customable shotyng at home, speciallye at buttes and prickes, make nothyng at all for stronge shooting which doth moste good in war. Therefore I suppose yf men shulde vse to goo into the fyeldes, and learne to shote myghty stronge shootes, and neuer care for any marke at al, they shulde do muche better.

**Cor.** The trouthe is, that fashion muche vsed, woulde do muche good, but this is to be feared, least that waye coulde not prouoke men to vse muche shotyng, bycause ther shulde be lytle pleasure in it. And that in shoting is beste, yat prouoketh a man to vse shotinge moste: For muche vse maketh men shoote, bothe strong and well, whiche two thinges in shootinge, every man doeth desyre. And the chiefe mayntayner of vse, in any thyng, is comparyson, and honeste contention. For whan a manne stryueh to be better than an other, he wyll gladly vse that thing, though it be neuer so paynful wherein he woulde excell, whiche thyng Aristotle verie pretelye doth note, sayenge.

Where is comparifon, there is victorie: Aristo. rhet. ad Theod.  
 where is victorie, there is pleasure: And where is pleasure, no man careth what labour or payne he taketh, bycause of the prayse, and pleasure, that he shall haue, in doynge better than other men.

Agayne, you knowe, Hesiodus wryteth Hesio. in ope et die.  
 to hys brother Perfes, yat al craftes men, by contending one honestly with an other, do encrease theyr cunnyng with theyr substance. And therefore in London, and other great Cities, men of one crafte, moste commonly, dwelle togyther, bycause in honest stryuyng togyther, who shall do best, euery one maye waxe bothe cunniger and rycher, so lykewyse in shootyng, to make matches to assemble archers togyther, to contende who shall shoote best, and winne the game, encreaseth ye vse of shotyng wonderfully amonges men.

**Phl.** Of Vse you speake very much Toxophile but I am sure in al other matters, Vse can do nothing, wythoute two other thinges be ioyned wyth it, one is a natural Aptnesse to a thinge, the other is a true waye or knowledge, howe to do the thing, to which. ii. yf Vse be ioyned, as thirde felowe, of them thre, procedeth perfectnesse and excellencie: If a manne lacke the first two, Aptnesse and Cunnyng, Vse can



do lytle good, at all. For he yat woulde be an oratour and is nothing naturallie fitte for it, that is to saye lacketh a good wytte and memorie, lacketh a good voyce, countenaunce and body, and other fuche like, ye[t] yf he had all these thinges, and knewe not what, howe, where, when nor to whome he shulde speake, surelye the vse of spekyng, woulde brynge out none other frute but playne follye and bablyng, so yat Vse is the laste and the least necessarye, of all thre, yet no thing can be done excellently without them al thre. And therefore Toxophile I my selfe bicause I neuer knewe, whether I was apte for shooting or no, nor neuer knewe waye, howe I shulde learne to shoote I haue not vsed to shoote: and so I thinke fise hundred more in Englande do besyde me. And surelye yf I knewe that I were apte, and yat you woulde teach me howe to shoote, I woulde become an archer, and the rather, bycause of the good communication, the whiche I haue had with you this daye, of shotyng.

**Tox.** Aptnesse, Knowledge, and Vse, euen as you saye, make all thinges perfecte. Aptnesse is the fyrst and chyefest thinge, without whiche the other two do no good at all. Knowledge doeth encrease al maner of Aptnesse, bothe lesse and more. Vse sayth Cicero, is farre aboue all teachinge. And thus they all three muste be had, to do any thinge very well, and yf anye one be awaye, what so euer is done, is done verie meanly. Aptnesse is ye gyfte of nature, Knowledge, is gotten by ye helpe of other: Vse lyeth in our owne diligence and labour. So that Aptnesse and vse be ours and within vs, through nature and labour: Knowledge not ours, but commynge by other: and therefore moost dilligently, of all men to be sought for. Howe these three thinges stande with the artillery of Englande, a worde or twoo I will saye.

All Englishe men generally, be apte for shotyng, and howe? Lyke as that grounde is plentifull and frutefull, whiche withoute any tyllynge, bryngeth out

corne, as for example, yf a man shoulde go to the myll or market with corne, and happen to spyl some in the waye, yet it wolde take roote and growe, bycause ye foyle is so good: so England may be thought very frutefull and apt to brynge oute shooters, where children euen from the cradell, loue it: and yong men without any teachyng so diligentlie vse it. Agayne, lykewyse as a good grounde, well tyllled, and well husbanded, bringeth out great plentie of byg eared corne, and good to the faule: so if the youthe of Englande being apte of it selfe to shote, were taught and learned how to shote, the Archers of England shuld not be only a great deale ranker, and mo then they be: but also a good deale bygger and stronger Archers then they be. This commoditie shoulde folowe also yf the youth of Englande were taught to shote, that euen as plowing of a good grounde for wheate, doth not onely make it mete for the seede, but also riueth and plucketh vp by the rootes, all thistles, brambles and weedes, whiche growe of theyr owne accorde, to the destruction of bothe corne and grounde: Euen so shulde the teaching of youth to shote, not only make them shote well, but also plucke away by the rootes all other desyre to noughtye pastymes, as disyng, cardyng, and boouling, which without any teaching are vsed euery where, to the great harme of all youth of this realme. And lykewise as burnyng of thistles and diligent weding them oute of the corne, doth not halfe so moche ryd them, as when ye ground is falloed and tilled for good grayne, as I haue hearde many a good husbandman say: euen so, neither hote punishment, nor yet diligent searhing oute of suche vnthriftnesse by the officers, shal so throwly wede these vngracious games out of the realme, as occupying and bringyng vp youth in shotynge, and other honest pastyme. Thirdly, as a grounde which is apt for corne and also wel tilled for corne: yet if a man let it lye stil and do not occupye it. iii. or. iiii. yeare: but then wyll sow it,

if it be wheate (sayth Columella) it wil turne into rye: so if a man be neuer so apte to shote, nor neuer so wel taught in his youth to shote, yet if he giue it ouer, and not vse to shote, truly when he shalbe eyther compelled in war tyme for his country sake, or els prouoked at home for his pleasure sake, to faule to his bowe: he shal become of a fayre archer, a stark squyrter and dribber. Therefore in shotyng, as in all other things, there can neyther be many in number, nor excellent in dede: excepte these. iiii. thynges, Aptnesse, Knowledge, and Vse goo togyther.

Phil. Very well sayde *Toxophile*, and I promyse you, I agree to this iudgement of yours altogyther and therefore I can not a lytle maruaile, why Englysshe men brynge no more helpe to shotyng, then nature it selfe gyueth them. For you se that euen children be put to theyr owne shiftes in shotyng, hauing nothyng taughte them: but that they maye chofe, and chaunce to shoote ill, rather then well, vnaptlye soner then fitlye, vntowardlye, more easely then wellfaouredlye, whiche thyng causeth manye neuer begynne to shoote: and moo to leaue it of when they haue begone, and moost of all to shote both worse and weaker, then they might shote, if they were taught.

But peraduenture some men wyll saye, that wyth vse of shootyng a man shall learne to shoote, true it is he shall learne, but what shal he learne? manye to shoote noughtly. For all Vse, in all thynges, yf it be not stayed with Cunnyng, wyll verie easely brynge a man to do yat thyng, what so euer he goeth aboute with muche illfaurednes and deformitie.

Which thinge how much harme it doth in learning both Crassus excellencie dothe proue in Tullie, and I my selfe haue experiens in my lytle shootyng. And therefore *Toxophile*, you must nedes graunt me that ether Englyshe men do il, in not ioynnyng Knowlege of shooting to Vse, or els there is no knowlege or cunnyng, which can be gathered of shooting.

De Orat. 1.

**Cor.** Learning to shoote is lytle regarded in England, for this consideration, bycause men be so apte by nature they haue a greate redy forwardnesse and wil to vse it, al though no man teache them, al though no man byd them, and so of theyr owne corage they runne hedlynge on it, and shoote they ill, shote they well, greate hede they take not. And in verie dede Aptnesse with Vse may do sumwhat without Knowledge, but not the tenthe parte, if so be they were ioyned with knowlege.

Whyche thre thynges be seperate as you se, not of theyr owne kynde, but through the negligence of men whyche coupleth them not to gyther. And where ye doubt whether there can be gadered any knowlege or arte in shootyng or no, surely I thynke that a man being wel exercised in it and sumwhat honestly learned with all, myght soone with diligent obseruyng and markyng the hole nature of shootyng, find out as it were an Arte of it, as Artes in other matters haue bene founde oute afore, seyng that shootyng standeth by those things, which maye both be thorowly perceued, and perfittly knowen, and suche that neuer failes, but be euer certayne, belongyng to one moost perfect ende, as shootyng freight, and keping of a length bring a man to hit the marke, ye chiefe end in shootyng: which two thynges a man may attaine vnto, by diligent vsyng, and well handlyng those instrumentes, which belong vnto them. Therefore I can not see, but there lieth hyd in the nature of Shootyng, an Arte, whiche by notyng, and obseruyng of him, that is exercised in it, yf he be any thyng learned at al, maye be taught, to the greate forderaunce of Artillarie through out al this Realme. And trewlye I meruell gretelye, that Englysshe men woulde neuer yet, seke for the Arte of shootyng, seinge they be so apte vnto it, so praysed of there frendes, so feared of there enemyes for it. Vegetius woulde haue maysters appointed, whyche shoulde teache youthe to

Vegetius.



shoote faire. Leo the Emperour of Rome, sheweth the same custome, to haue bene  
Leo. 6. 4.  
 alwayes amongest ye olde Romaynes: whych custome  
 of teachyng youth to shoote (saythe he) after it was  
 omitted, and litle hede taken of, brought the hole  
 Empire of Rome, to grete Ruine. *Schola Persica*,  
 that is the Scole of the Persians, ap-  
 poynted to brynge vp youthe, whiles  
Strabo. 11.  
 they were. xx. yeres olde in shooting, is as  
 notably knowne in Histories as the Impire of ye  
 Persians: whych schole, as doth apere in Cornelius  
 Tacitus, as sone as they gaue ouer and fell  
Cor. Tac. 2.  
 to other idle pastimes, brought bothe them  
 and ye Parthians vnder ye subiection of the Romaines.  
 Plato would haue common maisters and  
 stipendes, for to teache youthe to shoote,  
De leg. 7.  
 and for the same purpose he would haue a brode  
 feylde nere euery Citie, made common for men to vse  
 shotyng in, whyche sayeng the more reasonably it is  
 spoken of Plato, the more vnreasonable is theyr dede  
 whiche woulde ditche vp those feeldes priuatly for  
 ther owne profyt, whyche lyeth open generallye for  
 the common vse: men by suche goodes be made  
 rycher not honester sayeth Tullie. Yf men can be  
 perswaded to haue shootyng taughte, this  
De Offi. 2.  
 aucthoritie whyche foloweth will perswade  
 them, or els none, and that is as I haue ones sayde  
 before, of Kynge Dauid, whose fyrste acte and ordi-  
 naunce was after he was kynge that all Iudea should  
 learne to shoote. Yf shotyng could speake, she would  
 accuse England of vnkyndnesse and slouthfulnesse, of  
 vnkyndnesse toward her bycause she beyng left to a  
 lytle blynd vse, lackes her best maintener which is  
 cunnyng: of slouthfulnesse towarde theyr owne selfe,  
 bycause they are content wyth that whych aptnesse and  
 vse doth graunt them in shootyng, and wyl seke for  
 no knowlege as other noble common welthes haue  
 done: and the iustlier shootyng myght make thys  
 complaynt, seyng that of fence and weapons there is

made an Arte, a thyng in no wyfe to be compared to shootynge.

For of fence all mooste in euerye towne, there is not onely Masters to teache it, wyth his Prouostes Vfhers Scholers and other names of arte and Schole, but there hath not fayld also, whyche hathe diligently and well fauouredly written it and is set out in Printe that euery man maye rede it.

What difcommoditie doeth comme by the lacke of knowlege, in shootynge, it were ouer longe to rehearse. For manye that haue bene apte, and loued shootynge, bycause they knewe not whyche way to houlde to comme to shootynge, haue cleane tourned them felues from shootynge.

And I maye telle you Philologe, the lacke of teachynge to shoote in Englande, causeth very manye men, to playe with the kynges Actes, as a man dyd ones eyther with the Mayre of London or Yorke I can not tel whether, whiche dyd commaund by proclamation, euerye man in the Citie, to hange a lanterne wyth a candell, afore his dore: whiche thyng the man dyd, but he dyd not lyght it: And so manye bye bowes bicause of the acte, but yet they shote not: not of euyll wyll, but bycause they knowe not howe to shoote. But to conclude of this matter, in shoting as in all other thynges, Aptenesse is the fyrste, and chyefe thyng, whiche if it be awaye, neyther Cunnyng or Vfe, doeth anye good at all, as the Scottes and Fraunce men, wyth knowlege and Vfe of shootynge, shall become good Archers, whan a cunnyng shypwright shall make a stronge shyppe, of a Salowe tree: or whan a husbandman shall becom ryche, wyth sowyng wheat on Newmarket heath. Cunnyng muste be had, bothe to set out, and amende Nature, and also to ouersee, and correcte vfe: which vfe yf it be not led, and gouerned wyth cunnyng, shall sooner go amisse, than strayght.

Aptnesse.

Cunnyng.

Vfe maketh perfitnesse, in doinge that thyng,

whervnto nature maketh a man apte, and knowlege maketh a man cunninge before. So yat it is not so doubtful, which of them three hath moost stroke in shoting as it is playne and euident, that all thre must be had, in excellent shootyng.

**Ph.** For this communicacion Toxophile I am very glad, and yat for myn owne sake bicause I trust now, to become a shoter, And in dede I thought a fore, English men most apte for shoting, and I sawe them dayelye vse shotyng, but yet I neuer founde none, that woulde talke of anye knowlege whereby a man might come to shotyng. Therefore I trust that you, by the vse you haue had in shoting, haue so thorowly marked and noted the nature of it, that you can teache me as it were by a trade or waye how to come to it.

**Tox.** I graunte, I haue vsed shootinge meetly well, that I myght haue marked it wel ynoughe, yf I had bene diligent. But my much shootyng, hath caused me studie litle, so that thereby I lacke learnyng, whych shulde set out the Arte or waye in any thyng. And you knowe that I was neuer so well sene, in the Posteriorums of Aristotle as to inuent and searche out general Demonstrations for the setting forth of any newe Science. Yet by my trothe yf you wyll, I wyll goe with you into the fealdes at any tyme and tel you as much as I can, or els you maye stande some tyme at the prickes and looke on them which shoote best and so learne.

**Ph.** Howe lytle you haue looked of Aristotle, and how muche learnyng, you haue lost by shotyng I can not tell, but this I woulde saye and yf I loued you neuer so ill, that you haue bene occupied in sumwhat els besyde shotyng. But to our purpose, as I wyll not requyre a trade in shotinge to be taught me after the futeletye of Aristotle, euen so do I not agre wyth you in this poynt, that you wold haue me learne to shoote with lokyng on them which shoote best, for to I knowe I should neuer come to shote meanelye. For in shotyng as in all other thynges which be gotten by teachyng, there must be shewed a waye and a path

which shal leade a man to ye best and cheiffeſt point whiche is in ſhootynge, whiche you do marke youre ſelfe well ynough, and vttered it alſo in your communication, when you ſayde there laye hyd in ye nature of ſhootynge a certayne waye whych wel perceyued and thorowlye knowen, woulde bring a man wythout any wanderyng to ye beſte ende in ſhotynge whych you called hitting of the pricke. Therfore I would refer all my ſhootinge to that ende which is beſt, and ſo ſhuld I come the ſoner to ſome meane. That whiche is beſt hath no faulte, nor can not be amended. So ſhew to me beſt ſhootynge, not the beſte ſhoter, which yf he be neuer ſo good, yet hath he many a faulte eaſelye of any man to be eſpyed. And therfore meruell not yf I requyre to ſolowe that example whych is without faulte, rather than that which hath ſo manye faultes. And thys waye euery wyfe man doth ſolow in teachynge any maner of thyng. As Ariſtotle when he teacheth a man to be good he ſettes not before hym Socrates lyfe whyche was ye beſt man, but chiefe goodneſſe it ſelfe accordynge to whych he would haue a man directe his lyfe.

**Cor.** This waye which you requyre of me *Philologe*, is to hard for me, and to hye for a ſhooter to taulke on, and taken as I ſuppoſe out of the middes of Philoſophie, to ſerche out the perſite ende of any thyng, ye which perſite ende to fynde out, ſayth Tullie, is the hardeſt thyng in the worlde, the onely occaſyon and cauſe, why ſo many ſectes of Ora. ad. Bru. Philoſophers hathe bene alwayſe in learnynge. And althoughe as Cicero ſaith a man maye ymagine and dreame in his mynde of a perſite ende in any thyng, yet there is no experience nor uſe of it, nor was neuer ſene yet amonges men, as alwayes to heale the fycke, euer more to leade a ſhypp without daunger, at all times to hit the prick: ſhall no Phyſicion, no ſhyppmaſter, no ſhoter euer do. And Ariſtotle ſaith that in all deades there are two pointes to be Arist. pol. 8. 6. marked, poſſibilitie and excellencie, but



chiefely a wise man must folowe and laye hand on possibilitie for feare he leafe bothe. Therefore seyng that which is moost perfect and best in shootyng as alwayes to hit ye pricke, was neuer sene nor hard tel on yet amonges men, but onely ymagined and thought vpon in a man his mynde, me thinck this is the wisest counsel and best for vs to folow rather that which a man maye come to, than yat whyche is vnpossible to be attained to, lest iustely that sayeng of ye wyse mayde Ismene in Sophocles maye be verified on vs.

*A foole he is that takes in hande he can not ende.* Soph. Ant.

**Phi.** Well yf the perfite ende of other matters, had bene as perfitlye knowne, as the perfite ende of shotyng is, there had neuer bene so manye sectes of Philosophers as there be, for in shoting both man and boye is in one opinion, that alwayes to hit the pryck is mooste perfecte end that can be imagyned, so that we shall not nede gretly contend in this matter. But now sir, whereas you thynke yat a man in learning to shoote or any thyng els, shuld rather wyselye folow possibilitie, than vainly seke for perfite excellencie, surelye I wyl proue yat euery wyse man, yat wisely wold learne any thyng, shal chiefly go aboute yat wherevnto he knoweth wel he shal neuer come. And you youre selfe I suppose shal confesse ye same to be ye best way in teachyng, yf you wyl answere me to those thinges whych I wyl aske of you.

**Tox.** And yat I wyl gladlye, both bycause I thynke it is vnpossible for you to proue it, and also bycause I desire to here what you can saye in it.

**Phi.** The studie of a good Physicion Toxophile, I trow be to know al diseases and al medicines fit for them.

**Tox.** It is so in dede.

**Phi.** Bicause I suppose he would gladly at al tymes heale al diseases of al men.

**Tox.** Ye truly.

**Phi.** A good purpose surely, but was ther euer physicion yet among so many whyche had laboured

in thys study, that at al times coulede heale all diseases?

**Tor.** No trewly; nor I thyncke neuer shalbe.

**Phil.** Than Physicions by lyke, studie for yat, whiche none of them commeth vnto. But in learning of fence I pray you what is yat which men moost labor for?

**Tor.** That they may hit a nother I trow and neuer take blow theyr selfe.

**Phil.** You say trothe, and I am sure euery one of them would faine do so when so euer he playethe. But was there euer any of them so conning yet, which at one tyme or other hath not be[n] touched?

**Tor.** The best of them all is glad somtyme to escape with a blowe.

**Phil.** Than in fence also, men are taught to go aboute that thing, whiche the best of them all knowethe he shall neuer attayne vnto. Moreouer you that be shoters, I pray you, what meane you, whan ye take so greate heade, to kepe youre standynge, to shoote compasse, to looke on your marke so diligently, to cast vp grasse diuerse tymes and other thinges more, you know better than I. What would you do than I pray you?

**Tor.** Hit ye marke yf we could.

**Phil.** And doth euery man go about to hit the marke at euery shoote?

**Tor.** By my trothe I trow so, and as for my selfe I am sure I do.

**Phil.** But al men do not hit it at al tymes.

**Tor.** No trewlye for that were a wonder.

**Phil.** Can any man hit it at all tymes?

**Tor.** No man verilie.

**Phil.** Than by likely to hit the pricke alwayes, is vnpossible. For that is called vnpossible whych is in no man his power to do.

**Tor.** Vnpossible in dede.

**Phil.** But to shoote wyde and far of the marke is a thyng poffyble.



**Cor.** No man wyll denie that.

**Phil.** But yet to hit the marke alwayse were an excellent thyng.

**Cor.** Excellent surelie.

**Phil.** Than I am sure those be wiser men, which couete to shoote wyde than those whiche couete to hit the prycke.

**Cor.** Why so I pray you.

**Phil.** Because to shote wyde is a thyng poffyble, and therefore as you saye youre selfe, of euery wyse man to be folowed. And as for hittinge ye prick, bycause it is vnpossible, it were a vaine thyng to go aboute it; but in good sadnesse *Toxophile* thus you se that a man might go throghe all crafter and sciences, and proue that anye man in his science coueteth that which he shal neuer gette.

**Cor.** By my trouth (as you saye) I can not denye, but they do so: but why and wherfore they shulde do so, I can not learne.

**Phil.** I wyll tell you, euerye crafte and science standeth in two thynges: in Knowing of his crafte, and Working of his crafte: For perfyte knowlege bringeth a man to perfyte working. This knowe Paynters, karuers, Taylours, shomakers, and all other crafter men, to be true. Nowe, in euery crafte, there is a perfite excellencie, which may be better knowen in a mannes mynde, then folowed in a mannes dede: This perfytenesse, bycause it is generally layed as a brode wyde example afore al men, no one particuler man is able to compasse it; and as it is generall to al men, so it is perpetuall for al time whiche proueth it a thyng for man vnpossible: although not for the capacitie of our thinking whiche is heauenly, yet surelye for the habilitie of our working whyche is worldlye.

God gyueth not full perfytenesse to one man (sayth Tullie) lest if one man had all in any one science, ther shoulde be nothyng lefte for an other. Yet God suffereth vs to haue the perfyte knowledge of it, that such a knowledge dilligently

folowed, might bring forth accordyng as a man doth labour, perfyte woorkyng. And who is he, that in learnynge to wryte, woulde forsake an excellent example, and folowe a worse?

Therefore seing perfytenesse it selfe is an example for vs, let euerye man studye howe he maye come nye it, which is a poynt of wysdome, not reason with God why he may not attaine vnto it, which is vayne curiositie.

**Tor.** Surely this is gaily said Philologe, but yet this one thinge I am afraide of, lest this perfitnesse which you speke on will discouragement men to take any thyng in hande, bycause afore they begin, they know, they shal neuer come to an ende. And thus dispayre shall dispatche, euen at the fyrste entrynge in, many a good man his purpose and intende. And I thinke both you your selfe, and al other men to, woulde counte it mere folie for a man to tell hym whome he teacheth, that he shal neuer optaine that, whyche he would fainest learne. And therefore this same hyghe and perfitte waye of teachyng let vs leue it to hygher matters, and as for shootyng it shalbe content with a meaner waye well ynoughe.

**Phi.** Where as you saye yat this hye perfitnesse will discourage men, bycause they knowe, they shal neuer attayne vnto it, I am sure cleane contrarie there is nothyng in the world shall incourage men more than it. And whye? For where a man seith, that though a nother man be neuer so excellent, yet it is possible for hym selfe to be better, what payne or labour wyl that man refuse to take? yf the game be onse wonne, no man wyl set forth hys foote to ronne. And thus perfitnesse beyng so hyghe a thyng that men maye looke at it, not come to it, and beyng so plentifull and indifferent to euerye bodye that the plentifulnesse of it may prouoke all men to labor, bycause it hath ynoughe for all men, the indifferencye of it shall encourage euerye one to take more paine than hys fellowe, bycause euerye man is rewarded accordyng to his

nye commyng, and yet whych is moſte meruel of al, ye more men take of it, the more they leue behynd for other, as Socrates dyd in wyſdome, and Cicero in eloquens, whereby other hath not lacked, but hathe fare<sup>d</sup> a greate deele ye better. And thus perfitneſſe it ſelfe bycauſe it is neuer obteyned, euen therfore only doth it cauſe ſo many men to be ſo well ſene and perſite in many matters, as they be. But where as you thynke yat it were fondneſſe to teache a man to ſhoote, in lokyng at the moſt perfitneſſe in it, but rather woulde haue a manne go ſome other way to worke, I truſt no wyfe man wyl diſcomend that way, except he thincke himſelfe wyfer than Tullye, whiche doeth playnlye ſaye, that yf he taught any maner of craſte  
 De Orat. 3.  
 as he dyd Rhetorike he woulde labor to bringe a man to the knowlege of the moost perfitneſſe of it, whyche knowlege ſhould euer more leade and gyde a manne to do that thyng well whiche he went aboute. Whych waye in al maner of learnyng to be beſt, Plato dothe alſo declare in Euthydemus, of whome Tullie learned it as he dyd many other thynges mo. And thus you ſe Toxophile by what reaſons and by whoſe authoritie I do require of you this waye in teachyng me to ſhoote, which waye I praye you withoute any more delaye ſhew me as far forth as you haue noted and marked.

**Cox.** You cal me to a thyng Philologe which I am lothe to do. And yet yf I do it not beinge but a ſmale matter as you thynke, you wyll lacke frendſhypp in me, yf I take it in hande and not bring it to paſſe as you woulde haue it, you myghte thyncke great want of wyſdome in me.

But aduylſe you, ſeing ye wyll nedes haue it ſo, the blame ſhalbe yours, as well as myne: yours for puttyng vpon me ſo inſtauntlye, myne in receyuyng ſo ſondly a greater burthen then I am able to beare.

Therfore I, more wyllynge to fulfill your mynde, than hoppyng to accompliſh that which you loke for, ſhall ſpeake of it, not as a maſter of ſhotyng, but as one not

altogyther ignoraunt in shotynge. And one thyng I am glad of, the funne drawinge downe so fast into the west, shall compell me to drawe a pace to the ende of our matter, so that his darknesse shall somethyng cloke myne ignoraunce. And bycause you knowe the orderynge of a matter better then I: Aske me generallye of it, and I shall particularly answere to it. ¶hi.

Very gladly Toxophile: for so  
by ordre, those thynges  
whiche I woulde  
knowe, you shal  
tell the bet-  
ter: and  
those  
thynges  
whiche you shall tell, I  
shall remembre  
the better.



# TOXOPHI=

## LVS. B.

### ¶ THE SECONDE BOOKE OF the fchole of shotyng.



Philol. What is the cheyfe poynte in shootyng,  
that euerye manne laboureth to come to?

Tor. To hyt the marke.

Phi. Howe manye thynges are required  
to make a man euer more hyt the marke?

Tor. Twoo.

Phi. Whiche twoo?

Tor. Shotinge streyght and kepyng of a lengthe.

Phil. Howe shoulde a manne shoote strayght, and  
howe shulde a man kepe a length?

Tor. In knowyng and hauyng things, belongyng  
to shootyng: and whan they be knowen and had, in  
well handlyng of them: whereof some belong to  
shotyng strayght, some to keping of a length, some  
commonly to them bothe, as shall be tolde feuerally  
of them, in place conuenient.

Phi. Thynges belongyng to shotyng, whyche be  
they?

Tor. All things be outwarde, and some be instru-



mentes for euery fere archer to brynge with him, proper for his owne vse: other thynges be generall to euery man, as the place and tyme serueth.

**Phi.** Which be instrumentes?

**Tor.** Bracer, shotynggloue, stryng, bowe and shafte.

**Phi.** Whiche be general to all men?

**Tor.** The wether and the marke, yet the marke is euer vnder the rule of the wether.

**Phi.** Wherin standeth well handlynge of thynges?

**Tor.** All togyther wythin a man him selfe, some handlynge is proper to instrumentes, some to the wether, somme to the marke, some is within a man hym selfe.

**Phi.** What handlyng is proper to the Instrumentes?

**Tor.** Standyng, nockyng, drawyng, holdyng, lowfing, wherby commeth fayre shotyng, whiche neyther belong to wynde nor wether, nor yet to the marke, for in a rayne and at no marke, a man may shote a fayre shoote.

**Phi.** Well sayde, what handlynge belongeth to the wether?

**Tor.** Knowyng of his wynde, with hym, agaynst hym, fyde wynd, ful fyde wind, fyde wynde quarter with him, fyde wynde quarter agaynste hym, and so forth.

**Phi.** Well than go to, what handlynge belongeth to the marke?

**Tor.** To marke his standyng, to shote compasse, to draw euermore lyke, to lowfe euermore lyke, to confyder the nature of the pricke, in hylles and dales, in straye planes and winding places, and also to espy his marke.

**Phi.** Very well done. And what is onely within a man hym selfe?

**Tor.** Good heede gyuyng, and auoydyng all affections: whiche thynges oftentimes do marre and make all. And these thynges spoken of me generally and brefely, yf they be wel knowen, had, and handled,



shall brynge a man to fuche shootynge, as fewe or none euer yet came vnto, but surely yf he misse in any one of them, he can neuer hyt the marke, and in the more he doth misse, the farther he shoteth from his marke. But as in all other matters the fyrst steppe or stayre to be good, is to know a mannes faulte, and than to amende it, and he that wyl not knowe his faulte, shall neuer amende it.

**Phi.** You speake now Toxophile, euen as I wold haue you to speake : But lette vs returne agayne vnto our matter, and those thynges whyche you haue packed vp, in so shorte a rounge, we wyl lowse them forthe, and take euery pyece as it were in our hande and looke more narowlye vpon it.

**Tox.** I am content, but we wyl rydde them as fast as we can, bycause the funne goeth so faste downe, and yet somewhat muste needes be sayde of euerye one of them.

**Phi.** Well sayde, and I trowe we beganne wyth those thynges whiche be instrumentes, whereof the fyrste, as I suppose, was the Brafer.

**Tox.** Litle is to be sayd of the brafer. A bracer serueth for two causes, one to saue his arme from the strype of the strynge, and his doublet from wearynge, and the other is, that the strynge glydyng sharpelye and quicklye of the bracer, may make the sharper shoote. For if the strynge shoulde lyght vpon the bare sleue, the strengthe of the shoote shoulde stoppe and dye there. But it is best by my iudgemente, to gyue the bowe somuche bent, that the strynge neede neuer touche a mannes arme, and so shoulde a man nede no bracer as I knowe manye good Archers, whiche occupye none. In a bracer a man muste take hede of. iii. thinges, yat it haue no nayles in it, that it haue no bucles, that it be fast on with laces wythout agglettes. For the nayles wyl lye in funder, a mannes string, before he be ware, and so put his bowe in ieoperdy: Buckles and agglettes at vnwares, shall race hys bowe, a thinge bothe euyl to the syghte, and perilous for freatyng. And thus a

Bracer, is onely had for this purpose, that the stryng maye haue redye passage.

**Phī.** In my Bracer I am cunning ynough, but what saye you of the shootyng gloue.

**Tor.** A shootyng Gloue is chieflie, for to saue a mannes fyngers from hurtyng, that he maye be able to beare the sharpe stryng to the vttermost of his strengthe. And whan a man shooteth, the might of his shoote lyethe on the formoose fynger, and on the Ringman, for the myddle fynger whiche is the longest, lyke a lubber starteth backe, and beareth no weyghte of the stryng in a maner at all, therefore the two other fyngers, muste haue thicker lether, and that muste haue thickest of all, where on a man lowfeth moste, and for sure lowfyng, the formoste finger is moste apte, bycause it holdeth best, and for yat purpose nature hath as a man woulde saye, yocked it with the thombe. Ledder, if it be nexte a mans skynne, wyl sweate, waxe hard and chafe, therefore scarlet for the softnes of it and thicke-nesse wyth all, is good to sewe wythin a mannes gloue. If that wylle not serue, but yet youre finger hurteth, you muste take a searyng cloth made of fine virgin waxe, and Deres fewet, and put nexte your fynger, and so on wyth youre gloue. If yet you fele your fynger pinched, leaue shootyng both because than you shall shoote nought, and agayn by litle and lytle, hurtyng your finger, ye shall make it longe and longe to or you shoote agayne. A newe gloue pluckes many shootes bycause the string goeth not freelye of, and therefore the fingers muste be cut shorte, and trimmed with some ointment, that the string maye glyd wel awaye. Some wyth holdyng in the nocke of theyr shafte too harde, rub the skyn of there fingers. For this there be. ii. remedies, one to haue a goose quyll splottyd and sewed againste the nockynge, betwixt the lining and the ledder, whyche shall helpe the shoote muche to, the other waye is to haue some roule of ledder sewed betwixt his fingers at the setting on of the fingers, which shall kepe his fingers so in sunder, that they

shal not hold the nock so fast as they did. The shootyng gloue hath a purfe whych shall serue to put fine linen cloth and wax in, twoo necessary thynges for a shooter, some men vse gloues or other suche lyke thyng on their bow hand for chafyng, because they houlde so harde. But that commeth commonlye, when a bowe is not rounde, but somewhat square, fine waxe shall do verye well in such a case to laye where a man holdeth his bow: and thus muche as concernyng your gloue. And these thynges althoughe they be trifles, yet bycause you be but a yonge shoter, I woulde not leue them out.

¶ hi. And so you shal do me moost pleasure: The string I trow be the next.

¶ Cor. The nexte in dede. A thing though it be lytle, yet not a litle to be regarded. But  
 here in you muste be contente to put youre Stringe.  
 truste in honest stringers. And surely stringers ought more diligently to be looked vpon by the officers than ether bower or fletcher, bycause they may deceyue a simple man the more easelyer. And ill stringe brekethe many a good bowe, nor no other thyng halfe so many. In warre if a string breke the man is loste and is no man, for his weapon is gone, and althoughe he haue two stringes put one at once, yet he shall haue small leasure and lesse roume to bend his bow, therefore god fend vs good stringers both for war and peace. Now what a stringe ought to be made on, whether of good hempe as they do now a dayes, or of flaxe or of filke, I leaue that to the iugemente of stringers, of whome we muste bye them on. Eustathius  
 apou this verse of homere. Eustathius.

*Twang quoth the bow, and twang quoth the string,  
 out quicklie the shaft flue.*

*Iliad. 4.*

doeth tel, that in oulde tyme they made theyr bowe frynges of bullox thermes, whiche they twyned together as they do ropes, and therefore they made a great twange. Bowe frynges also hath bene made of the heare of an horse tayle called for the matter of

them Hippias as dothe appeare in manye good authors of the Greke tongue. Great Fauorinus. stringes, and lytle stringes be for diuerse purposes: the great string is more furer for the bowe, more stable to pricke wythal, but slower for the cast, the lytle stringe is cleane contrarye, not so sure, therfore to be taken hede of lesse, with longe tarienge on, it breake your bowe, more fit to shoote farre, than apte to pricke nere, therfore when you knowe the nature of bothe bigge and, lytle you must fit your bow, according to the occasion of your shootinge. In stringinge of your bow (though this place belong rather to the handlyng than to the thyng it selfe, yet because the thyng, and the handlyng of the thyng, be so ioyned together, I must nede some tyme couple the one wyth the other,) you must mark the fit length of your bowe. For yf the stringe be to short, the bending wyll gyue, and at the last slyp and so put the bowe in ieopardye. Yf it be longe, the bendyng must nedes be in the smal of the string, which beyng fore twined must nedes knap in sunder to ye distruction of manye good bowes. Moreouer you must looke that youre bowe be well nocked for fere the sharpnesse of the horne there a sunder the stringe. And that chaunceth ofte when in bending, the string hath but one way to strengthe it wyth all: You must marke also to set youre stringe streygte on, or elles the one ende shall wriethe contrary to the other, and so breke your bowe. When the stringe begynnethe neuer so lytle to were, trust it not, but a waye with it for it is an yll faued halpeny yat costes a man a crowne. Thus you se howe many ieopardyes hangethe ouer the felye poore bowe, by reason onlye of the stringe. As when the stringe is shorte, when it is longe, when eyther of the nockes be nought, when it hath but one way, and when it taryethe ouer longe on.

**Hj.** I se wel it is no meruell, though so many bowes be broken.

**Cor.** Bowes be broken twise as many wayes besyde

these. But a gayne in stringyng your bowe, you must loke for muche bende or lytle bende for they be cleane contrarye.

The lytle bende hath but one commoditie, whyche is in shootyng faster and farther shoote, and ye cause therof is, bycause the stryng hath so far a passage, or it parte wyth the shafte. The greates bende hath many commodities: for it maketh easyer shootyng the bowe beyng halfe drawen afore. It needeth no bracer, for the stryng stoppeth before it come at the arme. It wyl not so sone hit a mannes sleue or other geare, by the same reason: It hurteth not the shaft fedder, as the lowe bende doeth. It suffereth a man better to espye his marke. Therefore lette your bowe haue good byg bend, a shaftement and. ii. fyngers at the least, for these which I haue spoken of.

¶ **¶** The braiser, gloue, and stryng, be done. nowe you muste come to the bowe, the chiefe instrument of all.

Bowc.

**Cor.** Dyuers cuntryes and tymes haue vsed alwayes dyuers bowes, and of dyuers fashions.

Horne bowes are vsed in some places nowe, and were vsed also in Homerus dayes, for Pandarus bowe, the best shooter among al the Troianes, was made of two Goete hornes ioyned together, the lengthe wherof sayth Homer, was. xvi hand-bredes, not far differing from the lengthe of our bowes.

Iliad. 4.

Scripture maketh mention of brasie bowes. Iron bowes, and stile bowes, haue bene of longe tyme, and also nowe are vsed among the Turkes, but yet they must nedes be vnprofitable. For yf brasie, yron or stile, haue theyr owne strength and pith in them, they be farre aboue mannes strength: yf they be made meete for mannes strengthe, theyr pithe is nothyng worth to shoote any shoote wyth all.

Psalme. 17.

The Ethiopians had bowes of palme tre, whiche seemed to be very stronge, but we haue none experience of them. The lengthe of them was. iiiii. cubites. The men of Inde had theyr

Hero. in pol.



bowes made of a rede, whiche was of a great strengthe. And no maruayle though bowe and shaftes were made thereof, for the redes be so great in Inde, as Herodotus sayth, that of euery ioynte of a rede, a man may make a fyshers bote. These bowes, sayeth Arrianus in Alexanders lyfe, gaue so great a stroke, that no harneys or buckler though it were neuer so strong, could wythstand it. The length of fuche a bowe, was euen wyth the length of hym, that vsed it. The Lycians vsed bowes made of a tree, called in Latyn *Cornus*, (as concerning the name of it in English, I can soner proue that other men call it false, than I can tell the right name of it my selfe) this wood is as harde as horne and very fit for shaftes, as shall be toulde after.

In Thalia.

Arrianus. 8.

In Polym.

Quid sheweth that Syringa the Nympe, and one of the maydens of Diana, had a bowe of this wood whereby the poete meaneth, that it was verie excellent to make bowes of.

Metamor. 1.

As for brafell, Elme, Wych, and Asshe, experience doth proue them to be but meane for bowes, and so to conclude Ewe of all other thynges, is that, wherof perfite shootyng woulde haue a bowe made.

Thys woode as it is nowe generall and common amonges Englyshe men, so hath it continewed from longe tyme and had in moost price for bowes, amonges the Romaynes, as doth apere in this halfe verse of Vyrgill.

*Taxi torquentur in arcus.*

Virgilius.

i.

*Ewe fit for a bowe to be made on.*

Nowe as I saye, a bowe of Ewe must be hadde for perfecte shootinge at the prickes; whiche marke, because it is certayne, and mooste certaine rules may be gyuen of it, shall serue for our communication, at this time. A good bowe is knowen, much what as good counsayle is knowen, by the ende and prooffe of it, and yet bothe a bowe and good counsell, maye be made bothe better and worse, by well or vyl handlynge



of them: as oftentimes chaunceth. And as a man both muste and wyll take counsell, of a wyfe and honeste man, though he se not the ende of it, so must a shooter of necessitie, truste an honest and good bowyer for a bowe, afore he knowe the prooue of it. And as a wyfe man wyll take plentye of counfel afore hand what foever need, so a shooter shulde haue alwayes. iii. or. iiij. bowes, in store, what so euer chaunce.

¶hi. But if I truste bowyers alwayes, sometyme I am lyke to be deceyued.

Cor. Therefore shall I tell you some tokens in a bowe, that you shal be the seeldomer deceyued. If you come into a shoppe, and fynde a bowe that is mall, long, heauy and strong, lyinge st[r]eyght, not windyng, not marred with knot, gaule, wyndeshake, wem, freate or pynche, bye that bowe of my warrant. The beste colour of a bowe yat I fynde, is whan the backe and the bellye in woorkyng, be muche what after one maner, for such oftentimes in wearyng, do proue lyke virgin wax or golde, hauynge a fine longe grayne, euen from the one ende of the bowe, to the other: the short graine although suche proue well somtyme, are for ye most parte, very brittle. Of the makynge of the bowe, I wyll not greatly meddle, lest I shoulde seeme to enter into an other mannes occupation, whyche I can no skylle of. Yet I woulde defyre all bowyers to season theyr staues well, to woorke them and synke them well, to giue them heetes conuenient, and tyllerynges plentye. For thereby they shoulde bothe get them selues a good name, (And a good name encreaseth a mannes profyte muche) and also do greate commodite to the hole Realme. If any men do offend in this poynte, I am afrayde they be those iourney men whiche labour more spedily to make manye bowes for theyr owne monye sake, than they woorke dilligently to make good bowes, for the common welth sake, not layinge before theyr eyes, thys wyfe prouerbe.

*Some ynough, if wel ynough.*

Wherwyth euere honest handye craftes man shuld measure, as it were wyth a rule, his worke withal. He that is a iourney man, and rydeth vpon an other mannes horse, yf he ryde an honest pace, no manne wyll dyfallowe hym: But yf he make Poste haste, bothe he that oweth the horse, and he peraduenture also that afterwarde shal bye the horse, may chaunce to curfe hym.

Suche hastineffe I am afrayde, maye also be found amonges some of them, whych through out ye Realme in diuerse places worke ye kinges Artillarie for war, thinkynge yf they get a bowe or a sheafe of arrowes to some fashon, they be good ynough for bearynge gere. And thus that weapon whiche is the chiefe defence of the Realme, verry ofte doth lytle seruyce to hym that shoulde vse it, bycause it is so negligentely wrought of him that shuld make it, when trewlye I suppose that nether ye bowe can be to good and chefe woode, nor yet to well seasoned or truly made, wyth hetynge and tillerynges, nether that shafte to good wood or to thorowely wrought, with the best pinion fedders that can be gotten, wherwith a man shal serue his prince, defende his countrie, and saue hym selfe frome his enemye. And I trust no man wyll be angrye wyth me for spekyng thus, but those which finde them selfe touched therein: which ought rather to be angrye wyth them selfe for doynge so, than to be miscontent wyth me for sayng so. And in no case they ought to be displeased wyth me, feinge this is spoken also after that sorte, not for the notynge of anye person feuerallye, but for the amendinge of euerye one generallye. But turne we agayne to knowe a good shootynge bowe for oure purpose.

Euerye bowe is made eyther of a bough, of a plante or of the boole of the tree. The bough commonlye is verry knotty, and full of pinnes, weak, of small pithe, and sone wyll folowe the stringe, and seldome werith to any fayre coloure, yet for chyl dren and yonge beginners it maye serue well ynoughe. The plante proueth many tymes wel, yf it be of a good and clene groweth, and for

the pith of it is quicke ynoughe of cast, it wyll plye and bow far afore it breake, as al other yonge thinges do. The boole of ye tree is clenest without knot or pin, hauinge a faste and harde woode by reasonne of hys full groweth, stronge and myghtye of cast, and best for a bow, yf the staues be euen clouen, and be afterwarde wroughte not ouer[t]wharte the woode, but as the graine and streyght growyng of the woode leadethe a man, or elles by all reason it must sone breake, and that in many shiuers. This must be considered in the roughe woode, and when the bow staues be ouerwrought and facioned. For in dressing and pikynge it vp for a bow, it is to late to loke for it. But yet in these poyntes as I sayd before you muste truste an honest bowyer, to put a good bow in youre hand, somewhat lookinge your selfe to those tokens whyche I shewed you. And you muste not sticke for a grote or. xii. d. more than a nother man would giue yf it be a good bowe. For a good bow twise payde for is better than an ill bowe once broken.

Thus a shooter muste begyn not at the makynge of hys bowe lyke a bower, but at the bynge of hys bow lyke an Archere. And when his bow is bought and brought home, afore he truste muche vpon it, let hym trye and trym it after thys sorte.

Take your bow in to the feeld, shote in hym, sinke hym wyth deade heauye shaftes, looke where he commethe moost, prouyde for that place betymes, lest it pinche and so freate; when you haue thus shot in him, and perceyued good shootynge woode in hym, you must haue hym agayne to a good cunnyng, and trustie woorkeman, whyche shall cut hym shorter, and pike hym and dresse hym fyttter, make hym comme rounde compace euery where, and whippyng at the endes, but with discretion, lest he whyp in funder or els freete, soner than he is ware of, he must also lay hym streight, if he be caste or otherwise nede require, and if he be flatte made, gather hym rounde, and so shall he bothe shoote the faster, for farre shootynge, and also the surer for nere pryckynge.

¶¶¶. What yf I come into a shoppe, and spye oute

a bow, which shal both than please me very wel whan I by him, and be also very fit and meete for me whan I shoote in hym: so that he be both weake ynoughe for easye shootyng, and also quicke and spedye ynoughe for farre castyng, than I woulde thynke I shall nede no more businesse wyth him, but be contente wyth hym, and vse hym well ynoughe, and so by that meanes, auoyde bothe greate trouble, and also some cost whiche you cunnyng archers very often put your selues vnto, beyng verie Englyshe men, neuer ceafyng piddelyng about your bowe and spafes whan they be well, but eyther with shortyng and pikyng your bowes, or els with newe fetheryng, peecyng and headinge your shaftes, can neuer haue done vntyll they be starke nought.

**Tor.** Wel *Philologe*, surelye if I haue any iudgement at all in shootyng, it is no very great good token in a bowe, whereof nothyng whan it is newe and freshe, nede be cutte away, euen as Cicero sayeth of a yonge mannes wit and style, which you knowe better than I. For euerye newe thyng muste alwayes haue more than it neadeth, or elles it wyll not waxe better and better, but euer decaye, and be worse and worse. Newe ale if it runne not ouer the barrell whan it is newe tunned, wil sone lease his pith, and his head afore he be longe drawen on.

And lyke wyse as that colte whyche at the fyrste takyng vp, nedeth lytle breakyng and handlyng, but is fite and gentle ynoughe for the saddle, feeldome or neuer proueth well, euen so that bowe whyche at the fyrste byng, wythout any more prooffe and trimmyng, is fit and easie to shoote in, shall neyther be profitable to laste longe nor yet pleasaunt to shoote well. And therefore as a younge horse full of corage, wyth handlyng and breakinge, is brought vnto a sure pace and goyng, so shall a newe bowe freshe and quicke of caste, by finkyng and cuttyng, be brought to a stedfast shootyng. And an easie and gentle bow whan it is newe, is not muche vnlyke a softe spirited



boye when he is younge. But yet as of an vnrule boye with right handlyng, proueth ofteneft of al a well ordered man ; fo of an vnfit and staffyfh bow with good trimming, muſte nedes folowe alwayes a ſtedfaſt ſhotyng bowe.

And ſuche a perfite bowe, whiche neuer wyll deceyue a man, excepte a man deceyue it, muſt be had for that perfecte ende, whyche you looke for in ſhootinge.

**Phj.** Well Toxophile, I ſee wel you be cunninger in this gere than I : but put caſe that I haue thre or fower ſuche good bowes, pyked and dressed, as you nowe ſpeke of, yet I do remembre yat manye learned men do ſaye, that it is eaſier to gette a good thyng, than to ſaue and keepe a good thyng, wherfore if you can teache me as concernyng that poynte, you haue ſatiffyed me plentifullye as concernyng a bowe.

**Tox.** Trulye it was the nexte thyng that I woulde haue come vnto, for ſo the matter laye.

Whan you haue broughte youre bowe to ſuche a poynte, as I ſpake of, than you muſt haue an herden or wullen cloth waxed, wherwith euery day you muſt rubbe and chaſe your bowe, tyll it ſhyne and glytter withall. Whyche thyng ſhall cauſe it bothe to be cleane, well fauoured, goodlye of coloure, and ſhall alſo bryng as it were a cruſte, ouer it, that is to ſay, ſhall make it euery where on the outſyde, ſo ſlyppery and harde, that neyther any weete or wether can enter to hurte it, nor yet any freat or pynche, be able to byte vpon it : but that you ſhal do it great wrong before you breake it. This muſt be done oftentimes but ſpecially when you come from ſhootyng.

Beware alſo whan you ſhoote, of youre ſhaft hedes, dagger, knyues, or agglettes, leſt they race your bowe, a thing as I ſayde before, bothe vnſemely to looke on, and alſo daungerous for freates. Take hede alſo of miſtie and dankyſhe dayes, whiche ſhal hurte a bowe, more than any rayne. For then you muſte eyther alway rub it, or els leaue ſhootyng.

Your bowecaſe (this I dyd not promiſe to ſpeake of,

bycause it is without the nature of shootynge, or els I shoulde truble me wyth other thinges infinite more : yet feing it is a sauegarde for the bowe, somethynge I wyll saye of it) youre bowecase I saye, yf you ryde forth, muste neyther be to wyde for youre bowes, for so shall one clap vpon an other, and hurt them, nor yet so straye that scarce they can be thruft in, for that woulde laye them on fyde and wynde them. A bowecase of ledder, is not the best, for that is oftymes moyste which hurteth the bowes very much. Therfore I haue sene good shooters which woulde haue for euerye bowe, a fere case made of wollen clothe, and than you maye putte. iii. or. iiiii. of them so cased, into a ledder case if you wyll. This wollen case shall bothe kepe them in funder, and also wylle kepe a bowe in his full strengthe, that it neuer gyue for any wether. At home these wood cases be verye good for bowes to stand in. But take hede yat youre bowe stande not to nere a stone wall, for that wyll make hym moyste and weke, nor yet to nere any fier for that wyll make him shorte and brittle. And thus muche as concernyng the sauynge and keping of our bowe ; nowe you shall heare what thynges ye must auoyde, for feare of breakyng your bowe.

A shooter chaunfeth to breake his bowe commonly. iiiii. wayes, by the strynge, by the shafte, by drawyng to far, and by freates ; By the stryng as I sayde afore, whan the strynge is eyther to shorte, to long, not surely put on, wyth one wap, or put croked on, or shorne in fundre wyth an euell nocke, or suffered to tarye ouer longe on. Whan the stryng fayles the bowe muste nedes breake, and specially in the myddes ; because bothe the endes haue nothyng to stop them ; but whippes so far backe, that the belly must nedes violentlye rise vp, the whyche you shall well perceyue in bendyng of a bowe backward. Therfore a bowe that foloweth the strynge is least hurt with breakyng of strynges. By the shafte a bowe is broken ether when it is to short, and so you set it in your bow or when

Bowcase.



the nocke breakes for lytleneffe, or when the ftrynge flyppes wythoute the nocke for wydenesse, than you poule it to your eare and lettes it go, which must nedes breake the shafte at the leaste, and putte stringe and bowe and al in ieopardy, bycause the strength of the bowe hath nothyng in it to stop the violence of it.

Thys kynde of breakynge is mooste perillous for the standers by, for in such a case you shall se sometyme the ende of a bow flye a hooole score from a man, and that moost commonly, as I haue marked oft the vpper ende of the bowe. The bowe is drawne to far. ii. wayes. Eyther when you take a longer shafte then your owne, or els when you shyfte your hand to low or to hye for shootynge far. Thys waye pouleth the backe in funder, and then the bowe fleethe in many peces.

So when you se a bowe broken, hauynge the bellye risen vp both wayes or tone, the stringe brake it. When it is broken in twoo peces in a maner euen of and specyallye in the vpper ende, the shafte nocke brake it.

When the backe is pouled a funder in many peces to farre drawynge, brake it.

These tokens eyther alwayes be trewe or els verye feldome myffe.

The fourthe thyng that breketh a bow is fretes, which make a bowe redye and apte to breake by any of the. iii. wayes afore Fretes. sayde. Fretes be in a shaft as well as in a bowe, and they be muche lyke a Canker, crepyng and encreafynge in those places in a bowe, whyche be weaker then other. And for thys purpose must your bowe be well trymmed and piked of a conning man that it may come rounde in trew compasse euery where. For fretes you must beware, yf youre bow haue a knot in the backe, lest the places whyche be nexte it, be not alowed strong ynoughe to bere with the knotte, or elles the stronge knotte shall freate the weake places nexte it. Fretes be fyrst litle pinchese, the which when you perceau, pike the places about the pinches, to make them somewhat weker, and as

well commynge as where it pinched, and so the pinches shall dye, and neuer encrease farther in to great freates.

Freates begynne many tymes in a pin, for there the good woode is corrupted, that it muste nedes be weke, and bycause it is weake, therfore it freates.

Good bowyers therfore do rayse euery pyn and alowe it moore woode for feare of freatyng.

Agayne bowes moost commonlye freate vnder the hande, not so muche as some men suppose for the moistnesse of the hande, as for the heete of the hand: the nature of heate sayeth Aristotle is to lowfe, and not to knyt fast, and the more lowfer the more weaker, the weaker, the redier to freate.

A bowe is not well made, whych hath not wood plentye in the hande. For yf the endes of the bowe be staffyshe, or a mans hande any thyng hoothe the bellye must nedes sone frete. Remedie for fretes to any purpose I neuer hard tell of any, but onelye to make the freated place as stronge or stronger then any other. To fill vp the freate with lytle sheuers of a quill and glewe (as some say wyll do wel) by reason must be starke nought.

For, put case the freete dyd cease then, yet the cause which made it freate a fore (and that is weakenesse of the place) bicause it is not taken away must nedes make it freate agayne. As for cuttyng out of freates wythe all maner of pecynge of bowes I wyll cleane exclude from perfite shootyng. For peced bowes be muche lyke owlde housen, whyche be more chargeable to repayre, than commodiouse to dwell in. Agayne to swadle a bowe much about wyth bandes, verie seldome dothe anye good, excepte it be to kepe downe a spel in the backe, otherwyse bandes eyther nede not when the bow is any thinge worthe, or els boote not when it is marde and past best. And although I knowe meane and poore shooters, wyll vse peced and banded bowes sometyme bycause they are not able to get better when they woulde, yet I am sure yf they confyder it well, they shall fynde it, bothe lesse charge

and more pleasure to ware at any tyme a couple of shylynges of a new bowe than to bestowe. x. d. of peacyng an olde bowe. For better is coste vpon somewhat worth, than spence vpon nothing worth. And thys I speke also bycause you woulde haue me referre all to perfitnesse in shootyng.

Moreouer there is an other thyng, whyche wyl fone cause a bowe be broken by one of the. iii. wayes whych be first spoken of, and that is shotyng in winter, when there is any froste. Froste is wherefoeuer is any waterish humour, as is in al woodes, eyther more or lesse, and you knowe that al thynges frozen and Isie, wyl rather breke than bende. Yet if a man must nedes shoote at any fuche tyme, lette hym take hys bowe, and brynge it to the fyer, and there by litle and litle, rubbe and chafe it with a waxed clothe, whiche shall bring it to that poynt, yat he maye shote safelye ynough in it. This rubbyng with waxe, as I sayde before, is a great succour, agaynst all wete and moystnesse.

In the fyeldes also, in goyng betwyxt the pricks eyther wyth your hande, or elles wyth a clothe you muste keepe your bowe in fuche a temper. And thus muche as concernyng youre bowe, howe fyrste to knowe what wood is best for a bowe, than to chose a bowe, after to trim a bowe, agayne to keepe it in goodnesse, laste of al, howe to saue it from al harm and euylnesse.

And although many men can faye more of a bow yet I trust these thynges be true, and almoste sufficient for the knowlege of a perfecte bowe.

¶ **¶**hi. Surelye I beleue so, and yet I coulde haue hearde you talke longer on it: although I can not fe, what maye be sayd more of it. Therfore excepte you wyll pause a whyle, you may go forwarde to a shafte.

¶ **Cor.** What shaftes were made of, in oulde tyme authours do not so manifestlye shewe, as Hero. eutep. of bowes. Herodotus doth tel, that in the flood of Nilus, ther was a beast, called a water horle, of whose skinne after it was dried, the Egyptians made

shaftes, and dartes on. The tree called *Sen. Hipp.*  
*Cornus* was so common to make shaftes of, that in good  
 authours of ye latyn tongue, *Cornus* is taken for a shafte,  
 as in Seneca, and that place of Virgill, *Virg. enei. 9.*

*Volat Itala Cornus.*

Yet of all thynges that euer I warked of olde authours,  
 either greke or latin, for shaftes to be made of, there  
 is nothing so common as reedes. Herodotus in des-  
 cribynge the mightie hooft of Xerxes doth *In Polym.*  
 tell that thre great contries vsed shaftes  
 made of a rede, the Aethiopians, the Lycians (whose  
 shaftes lacked fethers, where at I maruayle moste of  
 all) and the men of Inde. The shaftes in  
 Inde were veye longe, a yarde and an *Arrianus. 8.*  
 halfe, as Arrianus doth saye, or at the  
 least a yarde. as Q. Curtius doth saye, and *Q. Curt. 8.*  
 therfore they gaue ye greater strype, but yet bycause  
 they were so long, they were the more vnhanfome, and  
 lesse profitable to the men of Inde, as Curtius doeth tell.

In Crete and Italie, they vsed to haue their shaftes  
 of rede also. The best reede for shaftes grewe in  
 Inde, and in Rhenus a flood of Italy. *Plin. 16. 36.*

But bycause suche shaftes be neyther  
 easie for Englishe men to get, and yf they were gotten  
 scarce profitable for them to vse, I wyll lette them  
 passe, and speake of those shaftes whyche Englysh  
 men at this daye moste commonly do approue and  
 allowe.

A shaft hath three principall partes, the stele, the  
 fethers, and the head: whereof euerye one muste be  
 feuerallye spoken of.

¶ Steles be made of dyuerse woodes. as.

Brasell.  
 Turkie wood.  
 Fusticke.  
 Sugercheste.  
 Hardbeame.  
 Byrche.

Affe.

Ooke.

Seruis tree.

Hulder.

Blackthorne.

Beche.

Elder.

Aſpe.

Salow.

Theſe wooddes as they be moſt commonly vſed, ſo they be moſte fit to be vſed: yet ſome one fytter then an other for diuers mennes ſhotinge, as ſhalbe toulde afterwarde. And in this pointe as in a bowe you muſte truſte an honeſt fletcher. Neuertheleſſe al though I can not teache you to make a bowe or a ſhaſte, whiche belongeth to a bowyer and a fletcher to comme to theyr luyng, yet wyll I ſhewe you ſome tokens to knowe a bowe and a ſhaſte, whiche per-tayneth to an Archer to come to good ſhootyng.

A ſtele muſte be well ſeaſoned for Caſtinge, and it muſt be made as the grayne lieth and as it groweth or els it wyl neuer flye clene, as clothe cut ouertwhart and agaynſte the wulle, can neuer hoofe a manne cleane. A knottye ſtele maye be ſuffered in a bygge ſhaſte, but for a lytle ſhaſte it is nothyng fit, bothe bycauſe it wyll neuer flye far, and beſydes that it is euer in danger of breakyng, it flieth not far bycauſe the ſtrengthe of the ſhoote is hindred and ſtopped at the knotte, euen as a ſtone caſt in to a plaine euen ſtil water, wyll make the water moue a greate ſpace, yet yf there be any whirlyng plat in the water, the mouyng ceafethe when it commethe at the whirlyng plat, whyche is not muche vnlyke a knotte in a ſhaſte yf it be conſidered wel. So euery thyng as it is plaine and ſtreight of hys owne nature ſo is it fitteſt for far mouyng. Therefore a ſtele whyche is harde to ſtande in a bowe, without knotte, and ſtreighte (I meane not artificiallye ſtreighte as the fletcher dothe make it, but

ally streight as it groweth in the wood) is best to a shaft of, eyther to go cleane, fly far or stand surely wedder. Now howe big, how small, how heuye, yght, how longe, how short, a shafte shoulde be parlye for euerye man (seynge we must taulke of the all nature of shootyng) can not be toulde no more you Rhethoricians can appoynt any one kynde of es, of sentences, of fygures fyt for euery matter, uen as the man and the matter requyreth so the t to be vsed. Therefore as concernyng those aries in a shafte, euery man muste auoyde them draw to the meane of them, whyche meane is n al thynges. Yet yf a man happen to offende y of the extremes it is better to offend in want scantnesse, than in to muche and outragiouse dyng. As it is better to haue a shafte a lytle to e than ouer longe, somewhat to lyght, than ouer yfthe, a lytle to small, than a greate deale to big, e thyng is not onely trewlye sayde in shootyng, n all other thynges that euer man goeth aboute, eatyng, taulkyng, and all other thynges lyke, a matter was onse excellentlye disputed vpon, in cooles, you knowe when.

d to offend, in these contraryes commeth much en take not hede, throughe the kynd of wood, of the shaft is made: Ffor some wood belongses excedyng part, some to ye scant part, some to eane, as Brasell, Turkiewood, Fusticke, Sugar e, and such lyke, make deade, heuy lumpish, yng shaftes. Againe Hulder, black thorne, Serues Beche, Elder, Aspe, and Salowe, eyther for theyr nes or lyghtenesse, make holow, starting, studding, yng shaftes. But Birche, Hardbeme, some , and some Asshe, beyng bothe stronge ynoughe ande in a bowe, and also lyght ynoughe to ar, are best for a meane, whiche is to be te oute in euery thinge. And althoughe I knowe some men shoote so stronge, that the deade es be lyghte ynoughe for them, and other some



so weeke, that the lowfe woodes be lykewyse for them bigge ynoughe yet generally for the moost parte of men, the meane is the best. And so to conclude that, is alwayes beste for a man, whiche is metest for him. Thus no wood of his owne nature, is eyther to lyght or to heuy, but as the shooter is him selfe whyche dothe vse it. For that shafte whiche one yeare for a man is to lyghte and scuddinge, for the same selfe man the next yeare may chaunce be to heuy and hobblynge. Therefore can not I expresse, excepte generally, what is best wood for a shaft, but let euery man when he knoweth his owne strength and the nature of euery wood, prouyde and fyt himselfe thereafter. Yet as concerning sheaffe Arrooue for war (as I suppose) it were better to make them of good Affhe, and not of Aspe, as they be now a dayes. For of all other woodes that euer I proued Affhe being big is swiftest and agayne heuy to giue a greate stripe with all, whyche Aspe shall not doo. What heuynes doth in a stripe euery man by experience can tell, therefore Affhe being both swyfter and heuier is more fit for sheafe Arrooes then Aspe, and thus muche for the best wood for shaftes.

Agayne lykewyse as no one wood can be greatlye meet for all kynde of shaftes, no more can one facion of the stele be fit for euery shooter. For those that be lytle brested and big toward the hede called by theyr lykenesse taperfashion, reshe growne, and of some merrie fellowes bobtayles, be fit for them whiche shote vnder hande bycause they shoote wyth a soste lowfe, and stresfes not a shaft muche in the breste where the weyghte of the bowe lyethe as you maye perceyue by the werynge of euery shafte.

Agayne the bygge brested shafte is fyte for hym, which shoteth right afore him, or els the brest being weke shoulde neuer wythstande that strong piththy kynde of shootyng, thus the vnderhande must haue a finall breste, to go cleane awaye oute of the bowe, the forehande muste haue a bigge breste to bere the

great myghte of the bowe. The shafte must be made rounde nothyng flat wyth out gal or wemme, for thys purpose. For bycause roundnesse (whether you take example in heauen or in earthe) is fittest shappe and forme both for fast mouing and also for sone Percyng of any thyng. And therefore Aristotle saythe that nature hath made the raine to be round, bycause it shoulde the easelyer enter throughe the ayre.

The nocke of the shafte is dyuerfly made, for some be greate and full, some hansom and lytle, some wyde, some narrow, some depe, some shalowe, some round, some longe, some wyth one nocke, some wyth a double nocke, wherof euery one hathe hys propertye.

The greate and full nocke, maye be well felte, and many wayes they saue a shafte from brekyng. The hansom and lytle nocke wyll go clene awaye frome the hand, the wyde nocke is noughte, both for breakyng of the shafte and also for soden slyppynge oute of the stryng when the narrowe nocke doth auoyde bothe those harmes. The depe and longe nocke is good in warre for sure keepyng in of the stryng. The shalow, and rownde nocke is best for our purpose in prickyng for cleane delyueraunce of a shoote. And double nockyng is vsed for double fuerty of the shaft. And thus far as concernyng a hoole stele.

Peecyng of a shafte with brasell and holie, or other heauy woodes, is to make the ende compasse heauy with the fethers in flyng, for the stedfaster shotyng. For if the ende were plumpe heauy wyth lead and the wood nexte it lyghte, the head ende woulde euer be downwarde, and neuer flye strayght.

Two poyntes in peeing be ynough, lest the moystnes of the earthe enter to moche into the peeing, and so leuse the glue. Therefore many poyntes be more pleasaunt to the eye, than profitable for the vse.

Summe vse to peece theyr shaftes in the nocke wyth brasel, or holie, to counterwey, with the head, and I haue sene summe for the same purpose, bore an hole a

lytle bineth the nocke, and put leade in it. But yet none of these wayes be anye thing needful at al, for ye nature of a fether in flying, if a man marke it wel, is able to bear vp a wonderful weyght: and I thinke fuche peeing came vp first, thus: whan a good Archer hath broken a good shafte, in the fethers, and for the fantasie he hath had to it, he is lothe to leese it, and therfore doeth he peece it. And than by and by other eyther bycause it is gaye, or elles because they wyll haue a shafte lyke a good archer, cutteth theyre hole shaftes, and peeceth them agayne: A thyng by my iudgement, more costlye than nedefull.

And thus haue you heard what wood, what fasshion, whatnockynge, what peecynge a stele muste haue: Nowe foloweth the fetherynge.

**¶**hi. I woulde neuer haue thought you could haue sayd halfe so muche of a stele, and I thynke as concernyng the litle fether and the playne head, there is but lytle to saye.

**Tor.** Lytle, yes trulye: for there is no one thing, in al shoting, so moche to be loked on as the fether. For fyrste a question maye be asked, whether any other thing besyde a fether, be fit for a shaft or no? if a fether onelye be fit, whether a goose fether onely, or no? yf a goose fether be best, then whether there be any difference, as concernynge the fether of an oulde goose, and a yonge goose: a gander, or a goose: a fennye goose, or an vplandish goose. Againe which is best fether in any goose, the ryght wing or the left wing, the pinion fether, or any other fether: a whyte, blacke, or greye fether? Thirdly, in fettyng on of your fether, whether it be pared or drawn with a thicke rybbe, or a thinne rybbe (the rybbe is ye hard quill whiche deuydeth the fether) a long fether better or a shorte, set on nere the nocke, or farre from the nocke, set on sleight, or som what bowyng? and whether one or two fethers runne on the bowe. Fourthly in couling or sheryng, whether high or lowe, whether somewhat swyne backed (I muste vse

shoters wordes) or fadle backed, whether rounde, or square shorne? And whether a shaft at any tyme ought to be plucked, and how to be plucked.

**Phi.** Surely Toxophile, I thynke manye fletchers (although daylye they haue these thinges in vre) if they were asked sodeynly, what they coulde saye of a fether, they could not saye so moch. But I praye you let me heare you more at large, expresse those thynges in a fether, the whiche you packed vp in so narrowe a rowme. And fyrst whether any other thyng may be vsed for a fether or not.

**Tox.** That was ye fyrste poynte in dede, and bycause there foloweth many after, I wyll hye apace ouer them, as one that had manye a myle to ride. Shaftes to haue had alwayes fethers Plinius Pl. 16. 36.  
in Latin, and Iulius Pollux in Greke, do I. Pol 1. 10.  
playnlye shewe, yet onely the Lycians I Her. Polym.  
reade in Herodotus to haue vsed shaftes without fedders. Onelye a fedder is fit for a shafte for. ii. causes, fyrste bycause it is leathe weake to giue place to the bowe, than bycause it is of that nature, that it wyll starte vp after ye bow. So, Plate, wood or horne can not serue, bycause the[y] wil not gyue place. Againe, Cloth, Paper, or Parchment can not serue, bycause they wyll not ryse after the bowe, therfore a fedder is onely mete, bycause it onelye wyl do bothe. Nowe to looke on the fedders of all maner of birdes, you shal se some so lowe weke and shorte, some so course, stoore and harde, and the rib so brickle, thin and narrow, that it can nether be drawen, pared, nor yet well set on, that except it be a swan for a dead shafte (as I knowe some good Archers haue vsed) or a ducke for a flyghte whiche lastes but one shoote, there is no fether but onelye of a goose that hath all commodities in it. And trewelye at a short but, which some man doth vse, ye Pecoock fether doth seldome kepe vp ye shaft eyther ryght or leuel, it is so roughe and heuy, so that many men which haue taken them vp for gayenesse, hathe layde them downe agayne for

profytc, thus for our purpose, the Goose is best fether, for the best shoter.

Phil. No that is not so, for the best shoter that euer was vsed other fethers.

Cor. Ye are so cunninge in shootynge I praye you who was that.

Phil. Hercules whyche had hys shaftes fethered with Egles fethers as Hesiodus dothe saye. Hesiod. in Scuto. Her.

Cor. Well as for Hercules, seyng nether water nor lande, heauen nor hell, coulde scarce contente hym to abyde in, it was no meruell thoughe a fely poore gouse fether could not plesse him to shoote wythal, and agayne as for Egles they flye so hye and builde so far of, yat they be very hard to come by. Yet welfare the gentle gouse which bringeth to a man euen to hys doore so manye excedynge commodities. A Gouse.

For the gouse is mans comforte in war and in peace slepyng and wakyng. What prayse so euer is gyuen to shootynge the gouse may challenge the beste parte in it. How well dothe she make a man fare at his table? Howe easelye dothe she make a man lye in hys bed? How fit euen as her fethers be onelye for shootynge, so be her quylles fytted onelye for wrytyng.

Phil. In deade Toxophyle that is the beste prayse you gaue to a gouse yet, and surelye I would haue sayde you had bene to blame yf you had ouerskrypte it.

Cor. The Romaynes I trowe Philologe not so muche bycause a gouse wyth cryng saued theyr Capitoliū and head toure wyth their golden Iupiter as Propertius doth say very pretely in thys verse.

*Anseris et tutum uoce fuisse Iouem.*

*Id est.*

Propertius

*Theues on a night had stolne Iupiter, had a gouse not a kekede.*

Dyd make a golden gouse and set hir in the top of ye Capitoliū, and appoynted also the Centurions to alow out of ye common hutche

Liuius 1.  
Dec. 5.

yearly stipendes for ye findinge of certayne Geese, ye Romaynes did not I saye giue al thys honor to a gouse



for yat good dede onely, but for other infinit mo which comme dayly to a man byn Geese, and surely yf I should declame in ye prayse of any maner of beste lyuyng, I would chose a gouse, But the gouse hath made vs flee to farre from oure matter. Nowe fir ye haue hearde howe a fether must be had, and that a goose fether onely. It foloweth of a yong gose and an oulde, and the residue belonging to a fether: which thing I wyll shortlye course ouer: wherof, when you knowe the properties, you maye fitte your shaftes accordyng to your shotyng, which rule you must obserue in all other thynges too, bycause no one fashion or quantitie can be fitte for euery man, no more than a shooe or a cote can be. The oulde goose fether is flyffe and stronge, good for a wynde, and fyttest for a deed shaft: the yonge goose fether is weake and fyne, best for a swyfte shaft, and it must be couled at the first shering, somewhat hye, for with shoting, it wyll saddle and faule very moche. The same thing (although not so moche) is to be considered in a goose and a gander. A fenny goose, euen as her flesh is blacker, stoorer, vnholfomer, so is her fether for the same cause courser stoorer and rougher, and therefore I haue heard very good fletchers saye, that the seconde fether in some place is better then the pinion in other some. Betwixt the winges is lytle difference, but that you must haue diuerse shaftes of one flight, fethered with diuerse winges, for diuerse windes: for if the wynde and the fether go both one way the shaft wyll be caryed to moche. The pinion fethers as it hath the firste place in the winge, so it hath the fyrst place in good fetheringe. You maye knowe it afore it be pared, by a bought whiche is in it, and agayne when it is colde, by the thinnesse aboue, and the thickeffe at the grounde, and also by the stifnes and fineffe which wyll cary a shaft better, faster and further, euen as a fine sayle cloth doth a shyppe.

The coulour of the fether is leste to be regarded,



yet somewhat to be looked on: for a good whyte, you haue sometyme an yll greye. Yet surelye it standeth with good reason to haue the cocke fether black or greye, as it were to gyue a man warning to nocke ryght. The cocke fether is called that which standeth aboue in ryght nocking, which if you do not obserue the other fethers must nedes run on the bowe, and so marre your shote. And thus farre of the goodnesse and choyse of your fether: now foloweth the setting on. Wherin you must looke that your fethers be not drawn for hastinesse, but pared euen and streyght with diligence. The fletcher draweth a fether when he hath but one swappe at it with his knyfe, and then playneth it a lytle, with rubbynge it ouer his knyfe. He pareth it when he taketh leysure and hede to make euery parte of the ryb apt to stand streight, and euen on vpon the stele. This thing if a man take not heede on, he maye chaunce haue cause to saye so of his fletcher, as in dressinge of meate is comunelye spoken of Cookes: and that is, that God sendeth vs good fethers, but the deuyll noughtie Fletchers. Yf any fletchers heard me saye thus, they wolde not be angrye with me, excepte they were yll fletchers: and yet by reason, those fletchers too, ought rather to amend them selues for doing yll, then be angry with me for saying truth. The ribbe in a styffe fether may be thinner, for so it wyll stande cleaner on: but in a weake fether you must leaue a thicker ribbe, or els yf the ryb which is the foundation and ground, wherin nature hath fet euerye cleft of the fether, be taken to nere the fether, it muste nedes folowe, that the fether shall faule, and droupe downe, euen as any herbe doeth whyche hath his roote to nere taken on with a spade. The lengthe and shortnesse of the fether, serueth for diuers shaftes, as a long fether for a long heauy, or byg shafte, the shorte fether for the contrary. Agayne the shorte may stande farther, the longe nerer the nocke. Youre fether muste stande almooste streyght on, but yet after that sorte, yat it maye turne

rounde in flyinge. And here I consider the wonderfull nature of shootynge, whiche standeth all togyther by that fashon, which is moste apte for quicke mouynge, and that is by roundenesse. For firste the bowe must be gathered rounde, in drawyng it must come rounde compasse, the stryng muste be rounde, the stele rounde, the best nocke rounde, the feather shorne somewhat rounde, the shafte in flyenge, muste turne rounde, and if it flye far, it flyeth a rounde compace. For eyther aboue or benethe a rounde compace, hyndereth the flyinge. Moreouer bothe the fletcher in makynge your shafte, and you in nockynge your shafte, muste take heede that two fethers equallye runne on the bowe. For yf one fether runne alone on the bowe, it shal quicklye be worne, and shall not be able to matche with the other fethers, and agayne at the lowfe, yf the shafte be lyght, it wyl starte, if it be heuye, it wil hoble. And thus as concernyng settyng on of your fether. Nowe of coulynge.

To shere a shafte hyghe or lowe, muste be as the shafte is, heauy or lyght, great or lytle, long or short. The swyne backed fashon, maketh the shaft deader, for it gathereth more ayer than the faddel backed, and therfore the faddel backe is surer for daunger of wether, and fitter for smothe fliing. Agayn to shere a shaft rounde, as they were wount somtime to do, or after the triangle fashon, whyche is muche vsed nowe a dayes, bothe be good. For roundnesse is apte for flynge of his owne nature, and al maner of triangle fashon, (the sharpe poynte goyng before) is also naturally apte for quicke entrynge, and therefore sayth Cicero, that cranes taught by nature, obserue in flyinge a triangle fashon alwayes, De nat. deer. bycause it is so apte to perce and go thorowe the ayer wythall. Laste of all pluckyng of fethers is noughte, for there is no fuerty in it, therfore let euery archer haue such shaftes, that he maye bothe knowe them and trust them at euery chaunge of wether. Yet if they must nedes be plucked, plucke them as litle as

can be, for so shal they be the lesse vnconstante. And thus I haue knit vp in as shorte a rounge as I coulede, the best fethers fetheringe and coulinge of a shafte.

**Phi.** I thynke surelye you haue so taken vp the matter wyth you, yat you haue leste nothyng be-hinde you. Nowe you haue brought a shafte to the head, whiche if it were on, we had done as concernyng all instrumentes belongyng to shootyng.

**Tor.** Necessitie, the inuentour of all goodnesse (as all authours in a maner, doo saye) amonges all other thinges inuented a shaft heed, firste to saue the ende from breakyng, then it made it sharpe to flycke better, after it made it of strong matter, to last better: Last of all experience and wysedome of men, hath brought it to suche a perfitnesse, that there is no one thing so profitable, belongyng to artillarie, either to stryke a mannes enemye forer in warre, or to shoote nerer the marke at home, then is a fitte heed for both purposes. For if a shaft lacke a heed, it is worth nothyng for neither vse. Therefore feinge heedes be so necessary, they must of necessitie, be wel looked vpon. Heedes for warre, of longe tyme haue ben made, not onely of diuers matters, but also of diuers fashions. The Troians had heedes of yron, as this verse spoken of Pandarus, sheweth :

*Vp to the pappe his string did he pull, his shaft to the harde yron.*

Iliados. 4

The Grecians had heedes of brasse, as Vlysses shaftes were heeded, when he flewe Antinous, and the other wowers of Penelope.

*Quite through a dore, flewe a shafte with a brasse head.*

Odysse. 21.

It is playne in Homer, where Menelaus was wounded of Pandarus shafte, yat the heedes were not glewed on, but tyed on with a string, as the commentaries in Greke playnelye tell.

Iliados. 4.

And therefore shoters at that tyme to carry their shaftes withoute heedes, vntill they occupied them, and than

set on an heade as it apereth in Homer the. xxi. booke *Odyfsei*, where Penelope brought Vlixes bowe downe amonges the gentlemen, whiche came on wowing to her, that he whiche was able to bende it and drawe it, might inioye her, and after her folowed a mayde sayth Homer, carienge  
*Odyse. 21.*  
 a bagge full of heades, bothe of iron and brasse.

The men of Scythia, vsed heades of brasse. The men of Inde vsed heades of yron. The Ethiopians vsed heades of a harde sharpe stone, as  
*Clio.*  
 bothe Herodotus and Pollux do tel. *Hero*  
 The Germanes as Cornelius Tacitus doeth *Polym*  
 saye, had theyr shaftes headed with bone, and many countreyes bothe of olde tyme and now, vse heades of horne, but of all other yron and stile muste nedes be the fittest for heades.

Iulius Pollux calleth otherwyse than we doe, where the fethers be the head, and that whyche  
*I. Pol. 1: 10.*  
 we call the head, he calleth the poynte.

Fashion of heades is diuers and that of olde tyme : two maner of arrowe heades sayeth Pollux, was vsed in olde tyme. The one he calleth *ὑγκινος* descrybynge it thus, hauyng two poyntes or barbes, lookyng backwarde to the stele and the fethers, which surely we call in Englishe a brode arrowe head or a swalowe tayle. The other he calleth *γλωχίς*, hauyng. ii. poyntes stretchyng forward, and this Englysh men do call a forke-head : bothe these two kyndes of heades, were vsed in Homers dayes, for Teucer vsed forked heades, sayyng thus to Agamemnon.

*Eighte good shaftes haue I shot sithe I came, eche one wyth a forke heade.*  
*Iliad. 8.*

Pandarus heades and Vlyfles heades were broode arrow heades, as a man maye learne in Homer that woulde be curiouse in knowyng that matter. Hercules vsed forked heades, but yet they had thre pointes or forkes, when other mennes had but twoo.  
*Plutarchus*  
 The Parthyans at that great battell where *in Crasso.*

they slewe ritche Crassus and his sonne vsed brode Arrowe heades, whyche stacke so fore that the Romaynes could not poule them out agayne. Commodus the Emperoure vsed forked heades, whose facion Herodiane doeth lyuely and naturally describe, sayinge that they were lyke the shap of a new mone wherwyth he would smite of the heade of a birde and neuer misse, other facion of heades haue not I red on. Our Englyshe heades be better in war than eyther forked heades, or brode arrowe heades. For firste the ende beyng lyghter they flee a great deele the faster, and by the same reason gyueth a far sorer stripe. Yea and I suppose if ye same lytle barbes whiche they haue, were clene put away, they shuld be far better. For thys euery man doth graunt, yat a shaft as long as it flyeth, turnes, and whan it leueth turnyng it leueth goyng any farther. And euery thyng that enters by a turnyng and boring facion, the more flatter it is, the worse it enters, as a knife thoughte it be sharpe yet because of the edges, wil not bore so wel as a bodkin, for euery rounde thyng enters beste and therefore nature, sayeth Aristotle, made the rayne droppes rounde for quicke percynge the ayer. Thus, eyther shaftes turne not in flyeng, or els our flatte arrowe heades stoppe the shafte in entryng.

**Phi.** But yet Toxophile to holde your communication a lytle I suppose the flat heade is better, bothe bycause it maketh a greter hoole, and also bycause it sticks faster in.

**Tor.** These two reasons as they be bothe trewe, so they be both nought. For fyrst the lesse hoole, yf it be depe, is the worst to heale agayn: when a man shoteth at hys enemy, he desyreth rather yat it should enter far, than stick fast. For what remedye is it I praye you for hym whych is smitten with a depe wounde to poull out the shaft quickly, except it be to haste his death spedely? thus heades whyche make a lytle hole and depe, be better in war, than those which make a great hole and sticke fast in.

Iulius Pollux maketh mencion of certayne kindes of heades for war which beare fyre in them, and scripture also speaketh somewhat of the same. Herodotus doth tell a wonderfull pollicy to be done by Xerxes what tyme he beseged the great Toure in Athenes: He made his Archers binde there shafte heades aboute wyth towre, and than set it on fyre and shoote them, whych thyng done by many Archers set all the places on fyre, whych were of matter to burne; and besydes that dafed the men wythin, so yat they knewe not whyther to turne them. But to make an ende of all heades for warre I woulde wyfhe that the head makers of Englande shoulde make their sheafe arrowe heades more harder poynted then they be: for I my selfe haue sene of late such heades fet vpon sheafe Arrowes, as ye officers yf they had sene them woulde not haue bene content wyth all.

Pollux. 7.

Psal. 7.

Hero. Vran.

Now as concernyng heades for pryckying, which is oure purpose, there be dyuerse kyndes, some be blonte heades, some sharpe, some both blonte and sharpe. The blont heades men vse bycause they perceauie them to be good, to kepe a lengthe wyth all, they kepe a good lengthe, bycause a man poulethe them no ferder at one tyme than at another. For in felynge the plombe ende alwayes equallye he may lowse them. Yet in a winde, and agaynste the wynd the wether hath so much power on the brode end, yat no man can kepe no fure lengthe, wyth such a heade. Therefore a blont hede in a caulme or downe a wind is very good, otherwyse none worse.

Sharpe heades at the ende wythout anye shoulders (I call that the shoulder in a heade whyche a mans finger shall feeles afore it come to the poynte) wyll perche quyklye throughe a wynde, but yet it hath. ii. difcommodities, the one that it wyll kepe no lengthe, it kepeth no lengthe, bycause no manne can poule it certaynly as far one tyme as at another: it is not drawen certaynlye so far one tyme as at another,



bycause it lackethe shouldrynge wherwyth as wyth a fure token a man myghte be warned when to lowse, and also bycause menne are afrayde of the sharpe poynt for setting it in ye bow. The seconde incommoditie is when it is lyghted on ye ground, ye smal poynte shall at euery tyme be in ieopardye of hurtyng, whyche thyng of all other wyll foneft make the shafte lese the lengthe. Now when blonte heades be good to kepe a lengthe wythall, yet noughte for a wynde, sharpe heades good to perche the wether wyth al, yet nought for a length, certayne heademakers dwellyng in London perceyuyng the commoditie of both kynde of heades ioyned wyth a discommoditie, inuented newe files and other instrumentes where wyth [t]he[y] broughte heades for prickyng to such a perfynesse, that all the commodities of the twoo other heades should be put in one heade wyth out anye discommoditie at all. They made a certayne kynde of heades whyche men call hie rigged, creased, or shouldred heades, or syluer spones heades, for a certayne lykenesse that suche heades haue wyth the knob ende of some syluer spones.

These heades be good both to kepe a length withal and also to perche a wynde wythall, to kepe a length wythall bycause a man maye certaynly poule it to the shouldrynge euery shoote and no farther, to perche a wynde wythall bycause the pointe from the shoulder forwarde, breketh the wether as al other sharpe thynges doo. So the blonte shoulder serueth for a fure lengthe keepyng, the poynte also is euer fit, for a roughe and greate wether Percyng. And thus much as shortlye as I could, as concernyng heades both for war and peace.

**¶** *¶*hi. But is there no cunning as concerning setting on of ye head?

**Cor.** Wel remembred. But that poynt belongeth to fletchers, yet you may desyre hym to set youre heade, full on, and close on. Ful on is whan the wood is be[n]t hard vp to the ende or stoppyng of the heade, close on, is when there is lefte wood on euerye syde

the shafte, ynoughe to fyll the head withall, or when it is neyther to little nor yet to greate. If there be any faulte in any of thefe poyntes, ye head whan it lyghteth on any hard stone or grounde will be in ieoperdy. eyther of breakynge, or els otherwyfe hurtyng. Stop-pynge of heades eyther wyth leade, or any thyng els, shall not nede now, bycause euery filuer spone, or showldred head is stopped of it selfe. Shorte heades be better than longe: For firste the longe head is worfe for the maker, to fyle strayght compace euery waye: agayne it is worfe for the fletcher to set strayght on: thyrdlye it is alwayes in more ieoperdie of breakinge, whan it is on. And nowe I trowe Philologe, we haue done as concernynge all Instrumentes belongyng to shootynge, whiche eueryfere archer ought, to prouyde for hym selfe. And there remayneth. ii. thynges behinde, whiche be generall or common to euery man the Wether and the Marke, but bicause they be so knit wyth shootynge strayght, or kepyng of a lengthe, I wyll deferre them to that place, and now we will come, (God wyllng) to handle oure instrumentes, the thing that euery man desireth to do wel.

**Phi.** If you can teache me so well to handle these instrumentes as you haue describ'd them, I suppose I shalbe an archer good ynough.

**Tor.** To learne any thing (as you knowe better than I Philologe) and speciallye to do a thing with a mannes handes, must be done if a man woulde be excellent, in his youthe. Yonge trees in gardens, which lacke al senses, and beastes without reason, when they be yong, may with handling and teaching, be brought to wonderfull thynges. And this is not onely true in natural thinges, but in artificiall thinges to, as the potter most connyngly doth cast his pottes whan his claye is softe and workable, and waxe taketh printe whan it is warme, and leathie weke, not whan claye and waxe be hard and oulde: and euen so, euerye man in his youthe, bothe with witte and body is moste apte and pliable to receyue any cunnyng that shulde be taught hym.

This communication of teaching youthe, maketh me to remembre the right worshipfull and my singuler good mayster, Sir Humfrey Wingfelde, to whom nexte God, I ought to refer for his manifolde benefites bestowed on me, the poore talent of learnyng, whiche god hath lent me : and for his sake do I owe my seruice to all other of the name and noble house of the Wyngfeldes, bothe in woord and dede. Thys worshypfull man hath euer loued and vsed, to haue many children brought vp in learnynge in his house amonges whome I my selfe was one. For whom at terme tymes he woulde bryng downe from London bothe bowe and shaftes. And when they shuld playe he woulde go with them him selfe in to the fyelde, and se them shoote, and he that shot fayrest, shulde haue the best bowe and shaftes, and he that shot ilfauouredlye, shulde be mocked of his felowes, til he shot better.

Woulde to god all Englande had vsed or wolde vse to lay the foundation of youth, after the example of this worshipful man in bringyng vp chyl dren in the Booke and the Bowe : by whiche two thynges, the hole common welth both in peace and warre is cheselye ruled and defended wythall.

But to our purpose, he that muste come to this high perfectnes in shootyng which we speake of, muste nedes begin to learne it in hys youthe, the omitting of whiche thinge in Englande, both maketh fewer shooters, and also euery man that is a shoter, shote warfe than he myght, if he were taught.

**Phi.** Euen as I knowe that this is true, whiche you saye, euen so Toxophile, haue you quyte discouraged me, and drawn my minde cleane from shootynge, feinge by this reason, no man yat hath not vsed it in his youthe can be excellent in it. And I suppose the same reson woulde discourage many other mo, yf they hearde you talke after this forte.

**Tax.** This thyng Philologe, shall discourage no man that is wyfe. For I wyll proue yat wysdome may worke the same thinge in a man, that nature doth in a chylde.

A chylde by thre thinges, is brought to excellencie. By Aptnesse, Desire, and Feare: Aptnesse maketh hym pliable lyke waxe to be formed and fashioned, euen as a man woulde haue hym. Desire to be as good or better, than his felowes: and Feare of them whome he is vnder, wyl cause hym take great labour and payne with diligent hede, in learnynge any thinge, wherof procedeth at the laste excellency and perfectnesse.

A man maye by wysdome in learnynge any thing, and specially to shoote, haue thre lyke commodities also, wherby he maye, as it were become younge agayne, and so attayne to excellencie. For as a childe is apte by naturall youth, so a man by vsyng at the firste weake bowes, far vnderneath his strength, shal be as pliable and readye to be taught fayre shotyng as any chylde: and daylye vse of the same, shal both kepe hym in fayer shotyng, and also at ye last bryng hym to stronge shootyng.

And in stede of the seruente desyre, which prouoketh a chylde to be better than hys felowe, lette a man be as muche stirred vp with shamefastnes to be worse than all other. And the same place that feare hathe in a chylde, to compell him to take payne, the same hath loue of shotyng in a man, to cause hym forsake no labour, withoute whiche no man nor chylde can be excellent. And thus whatsoeuer a chylde may be taught by Aptnesse, Desire, and Feare, the same thing in shootyng, maye a man be taughte by weake bowes, Shamefastnesse and Loue.

And hereby you may se that that is true whiche Cicero sayeth, that a man by vse, may be broughte to a newe nature. And this I dare be bould to saye, that any man whiche will wisely begynne, and constantlye perseuer in this trade of learnynge to shote, shall attayne to perfectnesse therein.

**Phi.** This communication Toxophile, doeth please me very well, and nowe I perceyue that moste generally and chesly youthe muste be taughte to shoote, and secondarilye no man is debarred therfrom excepte it be

more thorough his owne negligence for bicause he wyll not learne, than any disabilitie, bicause he can not lerne.

Therefore seying I wyll be glad to folowe your counsell in chofynge my bowe and other instrumentes, and also am ashamed that I can shote no better than I can, moreouer hauynge fuche a loue toward sho:ynge by your good reasons to day, that I wyll forsake no labour in the exercise of the same, I beseeche you imagyn that we had bothe bowe and shaftes here, and teache me howe I should handle them, and one thyng I desyre you, make me as fayre an Archer as you can.

For thys I am fure in learnynge all other matters, nothyng is broughte to the moost profytable vse, which is not handled after the moost cumlye fashion. As masters of fence haue no stroke fit ether to hit an other or else to defende hym selfe, whyche is not ioyned wyth a wonderfull cumlineffe. A Cooke can not chop hys herbes neither quickelye nor hanfomlye excepte he kepe fuche a mesure with hys choppyng kniues as woulde delyte a manne both to se hym and heare hym.

Euerye hand craft man that workes best for hys owne profyte, workes most femelye to other mens fight. Agayne in buyldynge a house, in makynge a shyppe, euery parte the more hanfomely, they be ioyned for profyt and laste, the more cumlye they be fashioned to euery mans fyght and eye. Nature it selfe taught men to ioyne alwayes wellfaouorednesse with profytablenesse. As in man, that ioynt or pece which is by anye chaunce depriued of hys cumlynesse the same is also debarred of hys vse and profytablenesse.

As he that is gogle eyde and lokes a squinte hath both hys countenaunce clene marred, and hys sight fore blemmyshed, and so in all other members lyke. Moreouer what tyme of the yeare bryngeth mooste profyte wyth it for mans vse, the same also couereth and dekketh bothe earthe and trees wyth moost cumlynesse for mans pleasure. And that tyme whych takethe

awaye the pleasure of the grounde, carieth wyth hym also the profyt of the grounde, as euery man by experience knoweth in harde and roughe winters. Some thynges there be whych haue no other ende, but onely cumlynesse, as payntyng, and Daunfing. And vertue it selfe is nothyng eles but cumlynesse, as al Philosophers do agree in opinion, therfore seyng that whych is best done in anye matters, is alwayes moost cumlye done as both Plato and Cicero in manye places do proue, and daylye experience dothe teache in other thynges, I praye you as I sayde before teache me to shoote as fayre, and welfauouredly as you can imagen.

**Tor.** Trewlye Philologe as you proue verie well in other matters, the best shootyng, is alwayes the moost cumlye shootyng but thys you know as well as I that Crassus shewethe in Cicero that as cumlynesse is the chiefe poynt, and most to be fought for in all thynges, so cumlynesse onely, can neuer be taught by any Arte or craft. But maye be perceyued well when it is done, not described wel how it should be done.

Yet neuerthelesse to comme to it there be manye waye whych wayes men haue assayed in other matters, as yf a man would folowe in learnyng to shoote faire, the noble paynter Zeuxes in payntyng Helena, whyche to make his Image bewtifull dyd chose out. v. of the fayrest maydes in al the countrie aboute, and in beholdyng them conceyued and drewe out fuche an Image that it far exceded al other, bycause the comelynesse of them al was broughte in to one moost perfyte comelynesse: So lykewyse in shotyng yf a man, woulde set before hys eyes. v. or. vi. of the fayrest Archers that euer he saw shoote, and of one learne to stande, of a nother to drawe, of an other to lowse, and so take of euery man, what euery man coulde do best, I dare saye he shoulde come to fuche a comlynesse as neuer man came to yet. As for an example, if the moost comely poynte in shootyng that Hewe Prophete the Kynges seruante hath and as my frendes Thomas and Raufe Cantrell doth vse with the moost semelye facyons that.



iii. or iiij. excellent Archers haue beside, were al ioyned in one, I am fure all men woulde wonder at ye excellencie of it. And this is one waye to learne to shoote fayre.

¶ **Phi.** This is very wel truly, but I praye you teache me somewhat of shootyng fayre youre selfe.

**Cor.** I can teache you to shoote fayre, euen as Socrates taught a man ones to knowe God, for when he axed hym what was God : naye sayeth he I can tell you better what God is not, as God is not yll, God is vnspokeable, vnsearcheable and so forth : Euen lyke wyse can I saye of fayre shootyng, it hath not this difcommodite with it nor that difcommoditie, and at last a man maye so shifte all the difcommodities from shootyng that there shall be left no thyng behynde but fayre shootyng. And to do this the better you must remember howe that I toulde you when I descrybed generally the hole nature of shootyng that fayre shotyng came of these thynges, of standyng, nockyng, drawyng, howldyng and lowfyng, the whych I wyll go ouer as shortly as I can, descrybye the difcommodities that men commonly vse in all partes of theyr bodies, that you yf you faulte in any such maye knowe it and so go about to amend it. Faultes in Archers do excede the number of Archers, whyche come wyth vse of shootyng wythoute teachyng. Vse and custome separated from knowlege and learnyng, doth not onely hurt shootyng, but the moost weyghtye thynges in the worlde beside : And therefore I maruayle moche at those people whyche be the mayneteners of vses withoute knowlege hauyng no other worde in theyr mouthe but thys vse, vse, custome, custome. Suche men more wylful than wyse, beside other difcommodities, take all place and occasion from al amendment. And thys I speake generally of vse and custome.

Whych thyng yf a learned man had it in hande yat woulde applye it to anye one matter, he myght handle it wonderfullye. But as for shootyng, vse is the onely cause of all fautes in it and therefore chylderne

more easly and soner maye be taught to shote excellentlye then men, bycause chylderne may be taught to shoote well at the fyrste, men haue more payne to vnlearne theyr yll vses, than they haue laboure afterwarde to come to good shootynge.

All the difcommodities whiche ill custome hath graffed in archers, can neyther be quyklye pouled out, nor yet sone reckened of me, they be so manye.

Some shooteth, his head forward as though he woulde byte the marke: an other flareth wyth hys eyes, as though they shulde flye out: An other winketh with one eye, and loketh with the other: Some make a face with writhing theyr mouthe and countenance so, as though they were doynge you wotte what: An other blereth out his tonge: An other byteth his lyppes: An other holdeth his necke a wrye. In drawyng some fet fuche a compasse, as though they woulde tourne about, and blysse all the feelde: Other heaue theyr hand nowe vp nowe downe, that a man can not decerne wherat they wolde shote, an other waggeth the vpper ende of his bow one way, the neyther ende an other waye. An other wil stand poyntinge his shafte at the marke a good whyle and by and by he wyll gyue hym a whip, and awaye or a man wite. An other maketh fuche a wrestling with his gere, as though he were able to shoote no more as longe as he lyued. An other draweth softly to ye midde, and by and by it is gon, you can not knowe howe.

An other draweth his shafte lowe at the breaste, as though he woulde shoote at a rouynge marke, and by and by he lifteth his arme vp pricke heyghte. An other maketh a wrynching with hys backe, as though a manne pynched hym behynde.

An other coureth downe, and layeth out his buttockes, as though he shoulde shoote at crows.

An other setteth forward hys lefte legge, and draweth backe wyth head and shoulders, as though he pouled at a rope, or els were afrayed of ye marke. An other draweth his shafte well, vntyll wythin. in

fingers of the head, and than he stayeth a litle, to looke at hys marke, and that done, pouleth it vp to the head, and lowfeth : whych waye although summe excellent shoters do vse, yet surely it is a faulte, and good mennes faultes are not to be folowed.

Summe men drawe to farre, summe to shorte, summe to slowlye, summe to quicklye, summe holde ouer longe, summe let go ouer sone.

Summe sette theyr shafte on the grounde, and fetcheth him vpwarde. An other poynteth vp towarde the skye, and so bryngeth hym downewardes.

Ones I sawe a manne whyche vsed a brasar on his cheke, or elles he had scratched all the skynne of the one fyde, of his face, with his drawynge hand.

An other I sawe, whiche at euerye shoote, after the loose, lyfted vp his ryght legge so far, that he was euer in ieoperdye of faulynge.

Summe stampe forwarde, and summe leape backwarde. All these faultes be eyther in the drawynge, or at the loose : with many other mo whiche you may easelye perceyue, and so go about to auoyde them.

Nowe afterwarde whan the shafte is gone, men haue manye faultes, whyche euell Custome hath broughte them to, and specially in crynge after the shafte, and speakynge woordes scarce honest for fuche an honest pastyme.

Suche woordes be verye tokens of an ill mynde, and manifeste signes of a man that is subiecte to immeasurable affections. Good mennes eares do abhor them, and an honest man therefore wyl auoyde them. And besydes those whiche muste nedes haue theyr tongue thus walkynge, other men vse other fautes as some will take theyr bowe and writhe and wrinche it, to poule in his shafte, when it flyeth wyde, as yf he draue a carte. Some wyll gyue two or. iii. srydes forwarde, daunsing and hoppynge after his shafte, as long as it flyeth, as though he were a madman. Some which feare to be to farre gone, runne backwarde as it were to poule his shafte backe. Another  
 11 forwarde, whan he feareth to be short, heau-

ynge after his armes, as though he woulde helpe his shafte to flye. An other writhes or runneth a fyde, to poule in his shafte strayght. One lifteth vp his heele, and so holdeth his foote still, as longe as his shafte flyeth. An other casteth his arme backwarde after the lowse. And an other fwynges hys bowe aboute hym, as it were a man with a staffe to make rounge in a game place. And manye other faultes there be, whiche nowe come not to my remembraunce. Thus as you haue hearde, manye archers wyth marrynge theyr face and countenance, wyth other partes, of theyr bodye, as it were menne that shoulde daunce antiques, be farre from the comelye porte in shootynge, whiche he that woulde be excellent muste looke for.

Of these faultes I haue verie many my selfe, but I talke not of my shootynge, but of the generall nature of shootynge. Nowe ymagin an Archer that is cleane wythout al these faultes and I am sure euerye man would be dellyted to se hym shoote.

And althoughe fuche a perfyte cumlynesse can not be expresse wyth any precepte of teachyng, as Cicero and other learned menne do saye, yet I wyll speake (accordyng to my lytle knowlege) that thing in it, whych yf you folowe, althoughe you shall not be wythout fault, yet your fault shal neyther quickly be perceued, nor yet greatly rebuked of them that stande by. Standyng, nockyng, drawyng, holdyng, lowfyng, done as they shoulde be done, make fayre shootynge.

The fyrste poynte is when a man shoulde shote, to take fuche footyng and standyng as shal be both cumlye to the eye and profytable to hys vse, setting hys countenance and al the other partes of hys bodye after fuche a behaiour and porte, that bothe al hys strengthe may be employed to hys owne moost a[d]uantage, and hys shoot made and handled to other mens pleasure and delyte. A man must not go to hastily to it, for that is rashnesse, nor yet make to much to do about it, for yat is curiositie, ye one fote must not stande so far from the other, lest he sloupe to muche whyche is vnsemye, nor yet to nere

Standyng.

together, leste he stande to streyght vp, for so a man shall neyther vse hys strengthe well, nor yet stande stedfastlye.

The meane betwyxt bothe must be kept, a thing more pleasaunte to behoulde when it is done, than easie to be taught howe it shoulde be done.

To nocke well is the easiest poynte of all, and there in is no cunninge, but onelyedylygente hede  
gyuyng, to set hys shafte neyther to hye nor Nockynge.  
to lowe, but euen streyght ouertwharte hys bowe, Vn-  
constante nockynge maketh a man leese hys lengthe.

And beydes that, yf the shafte hande be hye and the bowe hande lowe, or contrarie, bothe the bowe is in ieopardye of brekyng, and the shafte, yf it be lytle, wyll start: yf it be great it wyll hobble. Nocke the cocke fether vpward alwayes as I toulde you when I described the fether. And be sure alwayes yat your stringe slip not out of the nocke, for then al is in ieopardye of breakynge.

Drawynge well is the best parte of  
shootyng. Men in oulde tyme vsed other Drawynge.  
maner of drawynge than we do. They vsed to drawe low at the brest, to the ryght pap and no farther, and this to be trew is playne in Homer, where he descrybeth Pandarus shootyng.

Iliad. 4.

*Vp to the pap his stringe dyd he pul, his shafte to the hard heed.*

The noble women of Scythia vsed the same fashyon of shootyng low at the brest, and bicaufe there leste pap hindred theyr shootyng at the lowfe they cut it of when they were yonge, and therfore be they called in lackynge theyr pap Amazones. Nowe a dayes contrarie wyfe we drawe to the ryghte eare and not to the pap. Whether the olde waye in drawynge low to the pap, or the new way to draw a loft to the eare be better, an excellent wryter in Procopius  
Hist. Pers.  
Greke called Procopius doth saye hys mynde, shewyng yat the oulde fashyon in drawing to ye pap was nought of no pithe, and therfore saith Procopius: is Artyllarye disprayed in Homer whych calleth it *οὐρίδαρον*. I. Weake and able to do no good. Draw-

ying to the eare he prayseth greatly, whereby men shoote bothe stronger and longer: drawynge therefore to the eare is better than to drawe at the breste. And one thyng commeth into my remembraunce nowe Philologe when I speake of drawyng, that I neuer red of other kynde of shootyng, than drawing wyth a mans hand ether to the breste or eare: This thyng haue I fought for in Homer Herodotus and Plutarch, and therefore I meruayle how crofbowes came fyrst vp, of the which I am sure a man shall finde  
lytle mention made on in any good Authour. Crosbowes.

Leo the Emperoure woulde haue hys fouldyers drawe quyklye in warre, for that maketh a shaft flie a pace. In shootynge at the pryckes, hasty and quicke drawing is neyther sure nor yet cumlye. Therefore to drawe easely and vniiformely, that is for to saye not waggyng your hand, now vpwarde, now downewarde, but alwayes after one fashio[n] vntil you come to the rig or shouldring of ye head, is best both for profit and semelinenesse, Holdynge must not be longe, for it  
bothe putteth a bowe in ieopardy, and also  
marreth a mans shoote, it must be so lytle yat it may be perceyued better in a mans mynde when it is done, than seene with a mans eyes when it is in doying. Holding.

Lowfynge muste be muche lyke. So  
quicke and hard yat it be wyth oute all girdes, so softe and gentle that the shafte flye not as it were sente out of a bow case. The meane betwixte bothe, whyche is perfyte lowfynge is not so hard to be folowed in shootynge as it is to be descrybed in teachyng. For cleane lowfynge you must take hede of hyttyng any thyng aboute you. And for  
the same purpose Leo the Emperour would  
haue al Archers in war to haue both theyr heades pouled, and there berdes shauen lest the heare of theyr heades shuld stop the fyght of the eye, the heere of theyr berdes hinder the course of the stryng. Lowsynge.

And these preceptes I am sure Philologe yf you folowe in standyng, nockyng, drawynge, holdynge, and lowfynge, shal bryng you at the last to excellent fayre shootynge.



**Phil.** All these thynges Toxophile althoughe I bothe nowe perceyue them thorowlye, and also wyll remember them dilligently: yet to morowe or some other day when you haue leasure we wyll go to the pryckes, and put them by lytle and lytle in experience. For teachyng not followed, doeth euen as muchegood as bookes neuer looked vpon. But nowe seing you haue taught me to shote fayre, I praye you tel me fomwhat, how I should shoote nere lest that prouerbe myght be sayd iustlye of me sometye. He shootes lyke a gentle man fayre and far of.

**Tox.** He that can shoote fayre, lacketh nothyng but shootyng streyght and kepyng of a length wherof commeth hyttyng of the marke, the ende both of shootyng and also of thys our communication. The handlyng of ye wether and the mark bicaufe they belong to shootyng streyghte, and kepyng of a lengthe, I wyll ioyne them togyther, shewing what thinges belonge to kepyng of a lengthe, and what to shootyng streyght.

The greatest enemy of shootyng is the wynde and the wether, wherby true kepyng a lengthe is chefely hindred. If this thing were not, men by teaching might be brought to wonderful Wynde and wether. neare shootyng. It is no maruayle if the litle poore shafte being sent alone, so high in to the ayer, into a great rage of wether, one wynde tossinge it that waye, an other thys waye, it is no maruayle I saye, thoughe it leese the lengthe, and misse that place, where the shooter had thought to haue founde it. Greter matters than shotyng are vnder the rule and wyll of the wether, as saylynge on the sea. And lykwise as in sayling, the chiefe poynt of a good master, is to knowe the tokens of chaunge of wether, the course of the wyndes, that therby he maye the better come to the Hauen: euen so the best propertie of a good shooter, is to knowe the nature of the wyndes, with hym and agaynste hym, that thereby he maye the nerer shote at hys marke. Wyse maysters whan they canne not winne the beste hauen, they are gladde of the nexte: Good shooters also, yat can not whan they would hit

the marke, wil labour to come as nigh as they can. All things in this worlde be vnperfite and vnconstant, therefore let euery man acknowledge hys owne weakenesse, in all matters great and smal, weyghtye and merye, and glorifie him, in whome only perfyte perfitenesse is. But nowe fir, he that wyll at all aduentures vse the seas knowinge no more what is to be done in a tempest than in a caulme, shall soone becumme a marchaunt of Eele skynnes: so that shoter whiche putteth no difference, but shooteth in all lyke, in rough wether and fayre, shall alwayes put his wynnynges in his eyes.

Lytle botes and thinne boordes, can not endure the rage of a tempest. Weake bowes, and lyght shaftes can not stande in a rough wynde. And lykewyse as a blynde man which shoulde go to a place where he had neuer ben afore, that hath but one strayghte waye to it, and of eyther syde hooles and pyttes to faule into, nowe falleth in to this hole and than into that hole, and neuer commeth to his iourney ende, but wandereth alwaies here and there, farther and farther of: So that archer which ignorauntly shoteth considering neyther fayer nor foule, standyng nor nockyng, fether nor head, drawyng nor lowfyng, nor yet any compace, shall alwayes shote shorte and gone, wyde and farre of, and neuer comme nere, excepte perchaunce he stumble sumtyme on the marke. For ignoraunce is nothyng elles but mere blyndenesse.

A mayster of a shippe first learneth to knowe the cummyng of a tempest, the nature of it, and howe to behaue hym selfe in it, eyther with chaungyng his course, or poullinge downe his hye toppes and brode sayles, beyng glad to eschue as muche of the wether as he can: Euen so a good archer wyl fyrst wyth dilligent vse and markyng the wether, learne to knowe the nature of the wynde, and wyth wysedome, wyll measure in hys mynde, howe muche it wyll alter his shoote, eyther in lengthe kepyng, or els in streyght shotyng, and so with chaunging his standyng, or takyng an other shafte, the whiche he knoweth per-

lytlye to be fitter for his pourpose, eyther bycause it is lower fethered, or els bycause it is of a better wyng, wyll so handle wyth discretion hys shoote, that he shall seeme rather to haue the wether vnder hys rule, by good hede gyuyng, than the wether to rule hys shafte by any fodayne chaungyng.

Therefore in shootyng there is as muche difference betwixt an archer that is a good wether man, and another that knoweth and marketh nothyng, as is betwixte a blynde man and he that can se.

Thus, as concernyng the wether, a perfyte archer muste firste learne to knowe the sure flyghte of his shafte, that he may be boulde alwayes, to trust them, than muste he learne by daylye experience all maner of kyndes of wether, the tokens of it, whan it wyl cumme, the nature of it when it is cumme, the diuersitie and alteryng of it, whan it chaungeth, the decrease and diminishing of it, whan it ceaseth. Thirdly, these thinges knowen, and euery shoote diligently marked, than must a man compare alwayes, the wether and his footyng togyther, and with discretion measure them so, that what so euer the roughe wether shall take awaye from hys shoote the same shall iuste footyng restore agayne to hys shoote.

Thys thyng well knowen, and discretelye handeled in shootyng, bryngeth more profite and commendation and prayse to an Archer, than any other thyng besydes.

He that woulde knowe perfectly the winde and wether, muste put differences betwixte tymes. For diuersitie of tyme causeth diuersitie of wether, as in the whole yeare, Spryng tyme, Somer, Faule of the lease, and Winter; Lykewyse in one day Mornyng, Noonetyne, After noone, and Euentide, bothe alter the wether, and chaunge a mannes bowe wyth the strength of man also. And to knowe that this is so, is ynough for a shoter and artillerie, and not to ferche the cause, why it shoulde be so: whiche belongeth to a learned man and Philosophie.

In confydering the tyme of the yeare, a wyse Archer wyll folowe a good Shipman. In Winter and rough

wether, small bootes and lytle pinkes forsake the seas : And at one tyme of the yeare, no Gallies come abrode ; So lykewyse weake Archers, vsyng small and holowe shaftes, with bowes of litle pith, muste be content to gyue place for a tyme.

And this I do not saye, eyther to discommende or discourage any weake shooter : For lykewyse, as there is no shippe better than Gallies be, in a softe and a caulme sea, so no man shooteth cumlier or nerer hys marke, than some weake archers doo, in a fayre and cleare daye.

Thus euery archer must knowe, not onely what bowe and shafte is fittest for him to shoote withall, but also whattyme and season is best for hym to shote in. And surely, in al other matters to, amonge al degrees of men, there is no man which doth any thing eyther more discretely for his commendation, or yet more profitable for his aduauntage, than he which wyl knowe perfittly for what matter and for what tyme he is moost apte and fit. Yf men woulde go aboute matters whych they should do and be fit for, and not suche thynges whyche wylfullye they desyre and yet be vnfit for, verely greater matters in the common welthe than shootyng shoulde be in better case than they be. This ignorauncie in men whyche know not for what tyme, and to what thyng they be fit, causeth some wyse to be riche, for whome it were better a greate deale to be poore : other to be medlynge in euery mans matter, for whome it were more honestie to be quiete and styll. Some to desire to be in the Courte, whiche be borne and be fitter rather for the carte. Somme to be maysters and rule other, whiche neuer yet began to rule them selfe : some alwayes to iangle and taulke, whych rather shoulde heare and kepe silence. Some to teache, which rather should learne. Some to be prestes, whiche were fytter to be clerkes. And thys peruerse iudgement of ye worlde, when men mesure them selfe a misse, bringeth muche myforder and greate vnsemelynesse to the hole body of the common wealth, as yf



a manne should were his hoose vpon his head, or a woman go wyth a sworde and a buckeler euery man would take it as a greate vncumlynesse although it be but a tryfle in respecte of the other.

Thys peruerse iudgement of men hindreth no thyng so much as learnynge, bycause commonlye those whych be vnfitteft for learnynge, be cheyfly fet to learnynge.

As yf a man now a dayes haue two sonnes, the one impotent, weke, sickly, lisyng, stuttyng, and flatteryng, or hauynge any misshape in hys bodye: what doth the father of suche one commonlye saye? This boye is fit for nothyng els, but to fet to lernynge and make a prest of, as who would say, yat outcastes of the worlde, hauynge neyther countenance tounge nor wit (for of a peruerse bodye cummeth commonly a peruerse mynde) be good ynough to make those men of, whiche shal be appoynted to preache Goddes holye woorde, and minister hys blessed sacramentes, besydes other moost weyghtye matters in the common welthe put ofte tymes, and worthelye to learned mennes discrecion and charge: whan rather suche an offyce so hygh in dignitie, so godlye in administration, shulde be committed to no man, whiche shulde not haue a countenance full of cumlynesse to allure good menne, a bodye full of manlye autoritie to feare ill men, a witte apte for al learnynge with tongue and voyce, able to perfwade all men. And although fewe suche men as these can be founde in a common wealthe, yet surelye a godly disposed man, will bothe in his mynde thyncke fit, and with al his studie labour to get such men as I speke of, or rather better, if better can be gotten for suche an hie administration, whiche is most properlye appoynted to goddes owne matters and busineses.

This peruerse iugement of fathers as concernynge the fitnessse and vnfitnessse of theyr chyldren causeth the common wealthe haue many vnfit ministers: And seyng that ministers be, as a man woulde say, instrumentes wherwith the common wealthe doeth worke all her matters withall, I maruayle howe it chaunceth

yat a pore shomaker hath so much wit, yat he will prepare no instrument for his science neither knyfe nor aule, nor nothing els whiche is not very fitte for him : the common wealthe can be content to take at a fonde fathers hande, the ristraffe of the worlde, to make those instrumentes of, wherwithal she shoulde worke ye hieft matters vnder heauen. And surely an aule of lead is not so vnprofitable in a shomakers shop, as an vnfit minister, made of grosse metal, is vnsemely in ye common welth. Fathers in olde time among ye noble Persians might not do with theyr children as they thought good, but as the iudgement of the common wealth al wayes thought best. This fault of fathers bringeth many a blot with it, to the great deformitie of the common wealthe : and here surely I can prayse gentlewomen which haue alwayes at hande theyr glasse, to se if any thinge be amisse, and so will amende it, yet the common wealth hauing ye glasse of knowlege in euery mans hand, doth se fuch vncumlines in it : and yet winketh at it. This faulte and many suche lyke, myght be sone wyped awaye, yf fathers woulde bestow their children on yat thing alwayes, whervnto nature hath ordeined them moste apte and fit. For if youth be grafted streyght, and not a wrye, the hole common welth wil flourish thereafter. When this is done, than muste euery man beginne to be more ready to amende hym selfe, than to checke an other, meafuryng their matters with that wise prouerbe of Apollo, *Knowe thy selfe* : that is to saye, learne to knowe what thou arte able, fitte, and apt vnto, and folowe that.

This thinge shulde be bothe cumlie to the common wealthe, and moost profitable for euery one, as doth appere very well in all wise mennes deades, and specially to turne to our communication agayne in shootynge, where wise archers haue alwayes theyr instrumentes fit for theyr strength, and wayte euer more suche tyme and wether, as is most agreeable to their gere. Therefore if the wether be to fore, and vnfit for your shootynge, leaue of for that daye, and



wayte a better season. For he is a foole yat wyl not go, whome necessitie driueth.

**Phi.** This communication of yours pleased me so well Toxophile, that surely I was not hastie to calle you, to descrybe forthe the wether but with all my harte woulde haue suffered you yet to haue stande longer in this matter. For these thinges touched of you by chaunse, and by the waye, be farre aboue the matter it selfe, by whose occasion ye other were broughte in.

**Tox.** Weyghtye matters they be in dede, and fit bothe in an other place to be spoken: and of an other man than I am, to be handled. And bycause meane men must meddle wyth meane matters, I wyl go forwarde in descrybyng the wether, as concernynge shooting: and as I toulde you before, In the hole yere, Spring tyme, Somer, Fal of the lease, and Winter: and in one day, Morning, Noone tyme, After noone, and Euentide, altereth the course of the wether, the pith of the bowe, the strenght of the man. And in euery one of these times the wether altereth, as sumtyme wyndie, sumtyme caulme, sumtyme cloudie, sumtyme clere, sumtyme hote, sumtyme coulede, the wynde sumtyme moistye and thicke, sumtyme drye and smothe. A litle winde in a moystie day, stoppeth a shafte more than a good whiskeynge wynde in a clere daye. Yea, and I haue sene whan there hath bene no winde at all, the ayer so mistie and thicke, that both the markes haue ben wonderfull great. And ones, whan the Plage was in Cambrige, the downe winde twelue score marke for the space of. iiii. weekes, was. xiii. score, and an halfe, and into the wynde, beynge not very great, a great deale aboue. xiiii. score.

The winde is sumtyme playne vp and downe, whiche is commonly moste certayne, and requireth least knowlege, wherin a meane shoter with meane geare, if he can shoote home, maye make best shifte. A fyde wynde tryeth an archer and good gere verrye muche. Sumtyme it bloweth a losfe, sumtyme hard by the grounde: Sumtyme it bloweth by blastes, and sumtyme it continueth al in one: Sumtyme ful side

wynde, sumtyme quarter with hym and more, and lykewyse agaynst hym, as a man with castynge vp lyght grasse, or els if he take good hede, shall sensibly learne by experience. To se the wynde, with a man his eyes, it is vnpossible, the nature of it is so fyne, and subtile, yet this experience of the wynde had I ones my selfe, and that was in the great snowe that fell. iiii. yeares agoo : I rode in the hye waye betwixt Topcliffe vpon Swale, and Borowe bridge, the waye beyng sumwhat trodden afore, by waye fayr ynge men. The feldeles on bothe sides were playne and laye almost yearde depe with snowe, the nyght afore had ben a litle froste, so yat the snowe was hard and crufted aboue. That morning the sun shone bright and clere, the winde was whisteling a losse, and sharpe accordynge to the tyme of the yeare. The snowe in the hye waye laye lowfe and troden wyth horse feete : so as the wynde blewe, it toke the lowfe snow with it, and made it so slide vpon the snowe in the felde whyche was harde and crufted by reason of the frost ouer nyght, that therby I myght se verye wel, the hole nature of the wynde as it blewe yat daye. And I had a great delyte and pleasure to marke it, whyche maketh me now far better to remember it. Sometyme the wynd would be not past. ii. yeardes brode, and so it would carie the snowe as far as I could se. An other tyme the snow woulde blowe ouer halfe the felde at ones. Sometyme the snowe woulde tomble softly, by and by it would flye wonderfull fast. And thys I perceyued also that ye wind goeth by streames and not hole together. For I should se one streame wyth in a Score on me, than the space of. ii. score no snow would stirre, but after so muche quantitie of grounde, an other streame of snow at the same very tyme should be caryed lykewyse, but not equally. For the one would stande styll when the other flew a pace, and so contynewe somtyme swiflyer sometime flowlyer, sometime broder, sometime narrower, as far as I coule se. Nor it flew not streight, but sometyme it crooked thys waye sometyme that waye, and somtyme it ran

round aboute in a compase. And somtyme the snowe wold be lyft clene from the ground vp in to the ayre, and by and by it would be al clapt to the grounde as though there had bene no winde at all, streightway it woulde rise and flye agayne.

And that whych was the moost meruayle of al, at one tyme. ii. driftes of snowe flew, the one out of the West into ye East, the other out of the North in to ye East : And I saw. ii. windes by reason of ye snowe the one crosse ouer the other, as it had bene two hye wayes. And agayne I shoulde here the wynd blow in the ayre, when nothing was stirred at the ground. And when all was still where I rode, not verye far from me the snow should be lifted wonderfully. This experience made me more meruaile at ye nature of the wynde, than it made me conning in ye knowlege of ye wynd : but yet therby I learned perfitly that it is no meruayle at al though men in a wynde lease theyr length in shooting, seying so many wayes the wynde is so variable in blowynge.

But seyng that a Mayster of a shyp, be he neuer so cunnyng, by the vncertayntye of the wynde, leese many tymes both lyfe and goodes, surelye it is no wonder, though a ryght good Archer, by the self same wynde so variable in hys owne nature, so vnsefysble to oure nature, leese manye a shoote and game.

The more vncertaine and difceyuable the wynd is, the more hede must a wyse Archer gyue to know the gyles of it.

He yat doth mistrust is seldome begiled. For although therby he shall not attayne to that which is best, yet by these meanes he shall at leaste auoide yat whyche is worst. Besyde al these kindes of windes you must take hede yf you se anye cloude apere and gather by lytle and litle agaynst you, or els yf a shoure of raine be lyke to come vpon you : for than both the dryuing of the wether and the thyckynge of the ayre increaseth the marke, when after ye shoure al thynges are contrary clere and caulme, and the marke for the most parte new to begyn agayne. You must take

hede also yf euer you shote where one of the markes or both stondes a lytle short of a hye wall, for there you may be easlye begyled. Yf you take grasse and caste it vp to se howe the wynde standes, manye tymes you shal suppose to shoote downe the wynde, when you shote cleane agaynst the wynde. And a good reason why. For the wynd whych commeth in dede against you, redoundeth bake agayne at the wal, and whyrleth backe to the prycke and a lytle farther and than turneth agayne, euen as a vehement water doeth agaynst a rocke or an hye braye whyche example of water as it is more sensible to a mans eyes, so it is neuer a whyt the trewer than this of the wynde. So that the grasse caste vp shall flee that waye whyche in dede is the longer marke and deceyue quyklye a shooter that is not ware of it.

This experience had I ones my selfe at Norwytych in the chapel felde wythin the waulles. And thys waye I vsed in shootyng at those markes.

When I was in the myd way betwixt the markes whyche was an open place, there I toke a fether or a lytle lyght grasse and so as well as I coulde, learned how the wynd floode, that done I wente to the prycke as faste as I coulde, and according as I had founde ye wynde when I was in the mid waye, so I was sayne than to be content to make the best of my shoote that I coulde. Euen suche an other experience had I in a maner at Yorke, at the prickes, lying betwixt the castell and Ouse syde. And although you smile Philologe, to heare me tell myne owne fondenes: yet seing you wil nedes haue me teach you somewhat in shotyng, I must nedes somtyme tel you of myne owne experience, and the better I may do so, because Hippocrates in teachyng phylike, Hippo. De morb. vulg. vseth verye muche the same waye. Take heede also when you shoote nere the sea coast, although you be. ii. or. iii. miles from the sea, for there diligent markinge shall espie in the most clere daye wonderfull chaunginge. The same is to be considered lykewyse by a riuier side speciallie if

it ebbe and flowe, where he yat taketh diligent hede of ye tide and wether, shal lightly take away al yat he shooteth for. And thus of ye nature of windes and wether according to my marking you haue hearde Philologe: and hereafter you shal marke farre mo your selfe, if you take hede. And the wether thus marked as I tolde you afore, you muste take hede, of youre standing, yat therby you may win as much as you shal loofe by the wether.

**Phi.** I se well it is no maruell though a man misse many tymes in shootyng, seing ye wether is so vnconstant in blowing, but yet there is one thing whiche many archers vse, yat shall cause a man haue lesse nede to marke the wether, and that is Ame gyuing.

**Tor.** Of gyuyng Ame, I can not tel wel, what I shuld say. For in a straunge place it taketh away al occasion of foule game, which is ye only prayse of it, yet by my iudgement, it hindreth ye knowlege of shotyng, and maketh men more negligente: ye which is a disprayse. Though Ame be giuen, yet take hede, for at an other mans shote you can not wel take Ame, nor at your owne neither, bycause the wether wil alter, euen in a minute; and at the one marke and not at the other, and trouble your shafte in the ayer, when you shal perceyue no wynde at the ground, as I my selfe haue sene shaftes tumble a losse, in a very fayer daye. There may be a fault also, in drawing or lowfyng, and many thynges mo, whiche all togyther, are required to kepe a iust length. But to go forward the nexte poynte after the markyng of your wether, is the takyng of your standyng. And in a fide winde you must stand sumwhat crosse in to the wynde, for so shall you shoote the surer. When you haue taken good footing, than must you looke at your shafte, yat no earthe, nor weete be leste vpon it, for so should it leese the lengthe. You must loke at the head also, lest it haue had any strype, at the last shoote. A stripe vpon a stone, many tymes will bothe marre the head, croke the shafte, and hurte the fether, wherof the lest of them all, wyll cause a man leafe



his lengthe. For suche thinges which chaunce euery shoote, many archers vse to haue summe place made in theyr cote, fitte for a lytle fyle, a stone, a Hun-fyshskin, and a cloth to dresse the shaft fit agayne at all nedes. Thys must a man looke to euer when he taketh vp his shaft. And the heade maye be made to smothe, which wil cause it flye to far: when youre shafte is fit, than must you take your boweuen in the middes or elles you shall both leafe your lengthe, and put youre bowe in ieopardye of breakynge. Nockynge iuste is next, which is muche of the same nature. Than drawe equallye, lowfe equallye, wyth houldynge your hande euer of one heighte to kepe trew compasse. To looke at your shafte hede at the lowfe, is the greatest helpe to kepe a lengthe that can be, whych thyng yet hindreth excellent shotyng, bicause a man can not shote streight perfitlye excepte he looke at his marke: yf I should shoote at a line and not at the marke, I woulde alwayes loke at my shaft ende, but of thys thyng some what afterwarde. Nowe if you marke the wether diligentlye, kepe your standynge iustely, houlde and nocke trewlye, drawe and lowfe equallye, and kepe your compace certaynelye, you shall neuer misse of your lengthe.

**Phi.** Then there is nothyng behinde to make me hit ye marke but onely shooting streight.

**Tax.** No trewlye. And fyrste I wyll tell you what shyftes Archers haue founde to shoote streyght, than what is the best waye to shoote streyght. As the wether belongeth specially to kepe a lengthe (yet a side winde belongeth also to shote streight) euen so the nature of the pricke is to shote streight. The lengthe or shortnesse of the marke is alwayes vnder the rule of the wether, yet sumwhat there is in ye marke, worthy to be marked of an Archer. Yf the prickes stand of a streyght plane ground they be ye best to shote at. Yf ye marke stand on a hyl fyde or ye ground be vnequal with pittes and turninge wayes betwyxte the markes, a mans eye shall thynke that



to be streight whyche is croked : The experience of this thing is sene in payntyng, the cause of it is knownen by learnynge.

And it is ynoughe for an archer to marke it and take hede of it. The cheife cause why men can not shoote streight, is bicause they loke at theyr shaft : and this fault commeth bycause a man is not taught to shote when he is yong. Yf he learne to shoote by himselfe he is a frayde to pull the shafte throughe the bowe, and therefore looketh alwayes at hys shafte : yll vse confirmeth thys faulte as it doth many mo.

And men continewe the longer in thys faulte bycause it is so good to kepe a lengthe wyth al, and yet to shote streight, they haue inuented some waies, to espie a tree or a hill beyonde the marke, or elles to haue summe notable thing betwixt ye markes : and ones I sawe a good archer whiche did caste of his gere, and layd his quiuer with it, euen in the midway betwixt ye prickes. Summe thought he dyd so, for sauegarde of his gere : I suppose he did it, to shoote streyght withall. Other men vse to espie summe marke almoost a bow wide of ye pricke, and than go about to kepe him selfe on yat hande that the prycke is on, which thing howe much good it doth, a man wil not beleue, that doth not proue it. Other and those very good archers in drawyng, loke at the marke vntill they come almost to ye head, than they looke at theyr shafte, but at ye very lowse, with a seconde sight they fynde theyr marke agayne. This way and al other afore of me reherfed are but shiftes and not to be folowed in shotyng streyght. For hauyng a mans eye alwaye on his marke, is the only waye to shote streight, yea and I suppose so redye and easy a way yf it be learned in youth and confirmed with vse, yat a man shall neuer misse therein. Men doubt yet in loking at ye mark what way is best whether betwixt the bowe and the stringe, aboue or beneth hys hand, and many wayes moo : yet it maketh no great matter which way a man looke at his marke yf it be ioyned with comly shotyng. The diuerfite of mens standyng and drawing caufeth

diuerse men [to] loke at theyr marke diuerse wayes: yet they al lede a mans hand to shoote streight yf nothyng els stoppe. So that cumlynesse is the only iudge of best loking at the marke. Some men wonder why in casting a mans eye at ye marke, the hand should go freyght. Surely ye he confydered the nature of a mans eye, he wolde not wonder at it: For this I am certayne of, that no seruauant to hys mayster, no chylde to hys father is so obedient, as euerye ioynte and pece of the body is to do what soeuer the eye biddes. The eye is the guide, the ruler and the succourer of al the other partes. The hande, the foote and other members dare do nothyng without the eye, as doth appere on the night and darke corners. The eye is the very tonge wherwith wyt and reason doth speke to euery parte of the body, and the wyt doth not so sone signifye a thyng by the eye, as euery parte is redye to folow, or rather preuent the byddyng of the eye. Thys is playne in many thynges, but most euident in fence and feyghtyng, as I haue heard men saye. There euery parte standyng in feare to haue a blowe, runnes to the eye for helpe, as yonge chylde do to ye mother: the foote, the hand, and al wayteth vpon the eye. Yf the eye byd ye hand either beare of, or smite, or the foote ether go forward, or backward, it doth so: And that whyche is moost wonder of all the one man lookyng stedfastly at the other mans eye and not at his hand, wyl, euen as it were, rede in his eye where he purposeth to smyte nexte, for the eye is nothyng els but a certayne wyndowe for wit to shote oute hir head at.

Thys wonderfull worke of god in makyng all the members so obedient to the eye, is a pleasaunte thyng to remember and loke vpon: therfore an Archer maye be sure in learnyng to looke at hys marke when he is yong, alwayes to shoote freyghte. The thynges that hynder a man whyche looketh at hys marke, to shote freyght, be these: A fyde wynde, a bowe either to stronge, or els to weake, an ill arme, whan the fether runneth on the bowe to much, a byg breasted shafte, for

hym that shoteth vnder hande, bycause it wyl hobble: a little brested shafte for hym yat shoteth aboue ye hande, bicause it wyl starte: a payre of windyng pricks, and many other thinges mo, which you shal marke your selfe, and as ye knowe them, so learne to amend them. If a man woulde leaue to looke at his shafte, and learne to loke at his marke, he maye vse this waye, whiche a good shooter tolde me ones that he did. Let him take his bowe on the nyght, and shoote at. ii. lightes, and there he shall be compelled to looke alwayes at his marke, and neuer at his shafte: This thing ones or twyse vfed wyl cause hym forsake lokinge at hys shafte. Yet let hym take hede of settinge his shafte in the bowe.

Thus Philologe to shoote streyght is the leaste maysterie of all, yf a manne order hym selfe thereafter, in hys youthe. And as for keypyng a lengthe, I am sure the rules whiche I gaue you, will neuer disceyue you, so that there shal lacke nothyng, eyther of hittinge the marke alwayes, or elles verye nere shotyng, excepte the faulte be onely in youre owne selfe, whiche maye come. ii. wayes, eyther in hauing a faynt harte or courage, or elles in sufferynge your selfe ouer muche to be led with affection: yf a mans mynde fayle hym, the bodye whiche is ruled by the mynde, can neuer do his duetie, yf lacke of courage were not, men myght do mo mastries than they do, as doeth appere in leapyng and vaultinge.

All affections and specially anger, hurteth bothe mynde and bodye. The mynde is blynde therby: and yf the mynde be blynde, it can not rule the bodye aright. The body both blood and bone, as they say, is brought out of his ryght course by anger: Wherby a man lacketh his right strengthe, and therefore can not shoote wel. Yf these thynges be auoyded (wherof I wyl speake no more, both bycause they belong not properly to shoting, and also you can teache me better, in them, than I you) and al the preceptes which I haue gyuen you, dilligently marked, no doubt ye shal shoote as well as euer man dyd yet, by the grace of God.

ys communication handled by me Philologe, as I owe wel not perfytyly, yet as I suppose truelye you ist take in good worthe, wherein if diuers thinges do t all togyther please you, thanke youre selfe, whiche ulde haue me rather faulte in mere follye, to take at thyng in hande whyche I was not able for to rfourme, than by any honeste shamefastnes withsay ur request and minde, which I knowe well I haue t satisfied. But yet I wyl thinke this labour of ne the better bestowed, if tomorow or some other ye when you haue leysour, you wyl spende as much me with me here in this same place, in entreatinge e question *De origine animæ.* and the ioynnyng of it th the bodye, that I maye knowe howe far Plato, ristotle, and the Stoicians haue waded in it.

¶ Hi. How you haue handeled this matter Toxopnile may not well tel you my selfe nowe, but for your entlenesse and good wyll towarde learnyng and otyng, I wyll be content to shewe you any pleafure hensfoeuer you wyll: and nowe the funne is doune erfore if it please you, we wil go home and drynke my chambre, and there I wyll tell you playnelye hat I thinke of this communication and also, what iye we will appoynt at your request for the other atter, to mete here agayne.

Deo gratias.

LONDONI. 

*In ædibus Edouardi VVhytchurch.*

Cum priuilegio ad impri-  
mendum solum.

I. TOXOPHILUS, THE FOUNDATION OF ASCHAM'S AFTER-FORTUNES. In a humorous letter to Queen Elizabeth, on 10. Oct. 1567. (87.): Ascham divides his idea of her into two; and asking her in one personality as his friend, to intercede with her other personality, as queen, to relieve him from his difficulties, recounts to her the history of his pension.

"I wrote once a little book of shooting; King HENRY, her most noble father, did so well like and allow it, as he gave me a living for it; when he lost his life I lost my living; but noble King EDWARD again did first revive it by his goodness, then did increase it by his liberality; thirdly, did confirm it by his authority under the great seal of England, which patent all this time was both a great pleasure and profit to me, saving that one unpleasant word in that patent, called "during pleasure," turned me after to great displeasure; for when King EDWARD went, his pleasure went with him, and my whole living went away with them both. But behold God's goodness towards me, and his providence over me, in Queen MARY, her highness' sister's time, when I had lost all, and neither looked nor hoped for any thing again, all my friends being under foot, without any labour, without my knowledge I was suddenly sent for to come to the council. I came with all will, and departed with much comfort, for there I was sworn secretary for the Latin tongue, because some of them knew that King EDWARD had given me that office when I was absent in Germany, by good Mr Secretary's procurement, and because some did think I was fitter to do that office than those were that did exercise it. When I saw other so willing to do for me, I was the bolder somewhat to speak for myself. I saw WINCHESTER did like well the manner of my writing; I saw also that he only was *Dominus regit me* that time. I told him that my patent and living for my Book of Shooting was lost. Well, said he, cause it to be written again, and I will do what I can. I did so, and here I will open to your majesty a pretty subtlety in doing happily a good turn to myself, whereat perchance your majesty will smile; for surely I have laughed at it twenty times myself, and that with good cause, for I have lived somewhat the better for it ever since. I caused the same form of the patent to be written out, but I willed a vacant place to be left for the sum. I brought it so written to the bishop: he asked me why the old sum was not put in. Sir, quoth I, the fault is in the writer, who hath done very ill beside, to leave the vacant place so great, for the old word *ten* will not half fill the room, and therefore surely, except it please your lordship to help to put in twenty pounds, that would both fill up the vacant place well now and also fill my purse the better hereafter, truly I shall be put to new charges in causing the patent to be new written again. The bishop fell in a laughter, and forthwith went to Queen MARY and told what I had said, who, without any

more speaking, before I had done her any service, of her own bountifull goodnes made my patent twenty pounds by year during my life, for her and her successors."

That this account is but partially correct, and that he was making a telling story to amuse the Queen, appears from his letter to Gardiner, at the time of the renewal of his pension.

(170.) TO BISHOP GARDINER. [About April 1554.]

In writing out my patent I have left a vacant place for your wisdom to value the sum; wherein I trust to find further favour; for I have both good cause to ask it, and better hope to obtain it, partly in consideration of my unrewarded pains and undischarged costs, in teaching King EDWARD's person, partly for my three years' service in the Emperor's court, but chiefly of all when King HENRY first gave it me at Greenwich, your lordship in the gallery there asking me what the king had given me, and knowing the truth, your lordship said it was too little, and most gently offered me to speak to the king for me. But then I most happily desired your lordship to reserve that goodnes to another time, which time God hath granted even to these days, when your lordship may now perform by favour as much as then you wished by good will, being as easy to obtain the one as to ask the other. And I beseech your lordship see what good is offered me in writing the patent: the space which is left by chance doth seem to crave by good luck some words of length, as *viginti* or *triginta*, yea, with the help of a little dash *quadraginta* would serve best of all. But sure as for *decem* it is somewhat with the shortest: nevertheless I for my part shall be no less contented with the one than glad with the other, and for either of both more than bound to your lordship. And thus God prosper your lordship. Your lordship's most bounden to serve you.

R. ASKAM.

To the Rt Reverend Father in God,  
My Lord Bishop of Winchester his Grace, these.

2. The Byzantine Emperor LEO VI [b 865—ascended the throne 1. Mar. 886—d 911], surnamed in flattery the *Philosopher*, is reputed to have written, besides other works, one entitled *Τῶν ἐν πολέμοις τακτικῶν συντομὴς παράδοσις*, (A summary exposition of the art of war). Sir John Cheke's translation into Latin, of this book. in 1543 or 1544, was published at Basle in 1554, under the title of *Leonis Imperatoris. De bellico apparatu Liber, e graeco in latinum conuersus*, IOAN CHECO Cantrabrigensi Interp.

3. The Dutchman PETER NANNING, latinized NANNIUS, [b 1500—d 21 July 1557] was Professor of Latin, in college of 'the three languages' in the University of Louvain. He wrote a short tract of 34 pp, *De milite peregrino*: in which, in a dialogue



between Olympius and Xenophon, he discusses Archery & Guns. This tract is attached to another entitled *Oratio de additione Louanienſi*. Both were published at Louvain in September 1543.

4. The Frenchman JOHN RAVISIUS TEXTOR [b about 1480—d 3 Dec: 1524]: became Rector of the University of Paris. His *Officina* was first published in 1522. The passage that provoked Ascham's ire is, *Crinitus ait Scotos (qui vicini sunt Britannis) in dirigendis sagittis acres esse et egregios*. Fol 158. Ed. 1532.

5. The Florentine PETER RICCIO or latinized CRINITUS [b 1465—d about 1504.], an Italian biographer and poet. In December, 1504 was published his *Commentarii de Honestâ Disciplina*.

6. The French Chronicler, ROBERT GAGUIN [b about 1425—d 22. July. 1502.] General of the Order of the Trinitarians, and reputed the best narrator of his age. The first edition of his *Compendium super Francorum gestis* was published in Paris, in 1495.

7. The Scot JOHN MAJOR, latinized IOANNES MAJOR, D.D. [b 1478—d 1540] was for many years Professor of Theology and one of the Doctors of the Sorbonne, at Paris. He published his *Historia Maioris Britannia, tam Anglia quam Scotia, per Ioannem Maiorem, nomine quidem Scotum, professione autem Theologum, e veterum monumentis concinnata*. 4to Paris. 1521. "This history is divided into six books wherein he gives a summary account of the affairs of Scotland from Fergus I. till the marriage of King James III., in the year 1469, with which he concludes his work." Mackenzie. *Writers of the Scottish Nation*, ii. 315.

8. HECTOR BOETHIUS, or BOECK, or BORIS [b about 1470—d about 1550] a native of Dundee, became Principal of King's College, Aberdeen. wrote *Scotorum historia a prima gentis origine. &c.* in 17 books, first published in Paris in 1526, and subsequently enlarged in later editions.

9. Sir Thomas Elyot [d 1546.] The work referred to by Ascham, does not appear ever to have been published.



•

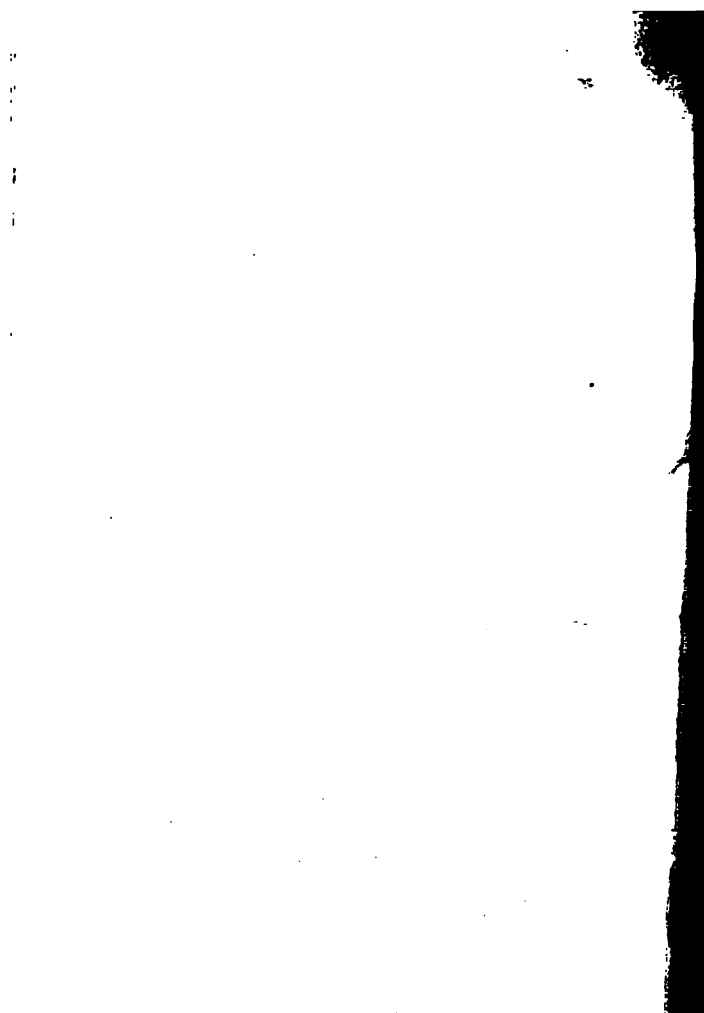
•

•

•

•

\_\_\_\_\_





3 626 3

STANFORD UNIVERS  
STANFORD AUXILI  
STANFORD, CALIFORN  
(415) 723-

All books may be reca

DATE D

28D JUL 10 1995  
JUL 10 1995

